

THE
TERMINATIONS
AND
EXAMPLES
OF THE
DECLENSIONS
AND
CONJUGATIONS;

With the manner of declining of Nouns, also declining and conjugating of Verbs; wherein is shewed, what Tenses are formed from others, and how; and hereunto are added a few questions and answers necessary for young scholars to be acquainted with, toward the better understanding of what they do learn, when they do enter upon the *Latine Tongue*; that they may proceed in their learning with more delight than they usually do: which by often repetition, will make the students herein perfect in their *Nouns* and *Verbs*; according to the directions in the Preface to *Lilly's Grammar*; and till then they are not judged (by that same excellent Preface) ready to go any further, viz. till they have this already learned.

In brief the whole is a Superstructure upon
M^r CH. HOOLE'S foundation. K

*Non sunt contemnenda quasi parva, sine quibus con-
stare magna non possunt.*

CAMBRIDGE
Printed by John Sturges, at the University
ANNO DOMINI 1685.

Handwritten signature or text, possibly "L. J. ..."

Handwritten signature or text, possibly "L. J. ..."

Large, elaborate handwritten signature or text, possibly "L. J. ..."

1
TERMINATIONS
AND
EXAMPLES
OF THE
DECLENSIONS
AND
CONJUGATIONS:

With the manner of declining of Nouns, also declining and conjugating of Verbs; wherein is shewed, what Tenses are formed from others, and how; and hereunto are added a few questions and answers necessary for young scholars to be acquainted with, toward the better understanding of what they do learn, when they do enter upon the *Latine Tongue*; that they may proceed in their learning with more delight than they usually do: which by often repetition, will make the students herein perfect in their *Nouns* and *Verbs*; according to the directions in the Preface to *Lilly's Grammar*; and till then they are not judged (by that same excellent Preface) ready to go any further, viz. till they have this already learned.

In brief the whole is a Superstructure upon
M^r CH. HOOLE'S foundation.

Non sunt contemnenda quasi parva, sine quibus consistere magna non possunt.

CAMBRIDGE.
Printed by John Field, Printer to the University.
ANNO DOMINI MDCLXX.

1568/3247



(1)

The Terminations of the five Declensions.

Singulariter.	Signs of Cases.	1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
	<i>The</i> Nom.	a.	r. us. ius. um.	a. c. e. i. l. n. o. r. s. t. x.	us u.	es.
	<i>Of</i> Gen.	æ.	i	is	us u.	ei.
	<i>To</i> Dativ.	z	o	i	ui u	ei
	<i>The</i> Accus.	am	um	em im	um u	em
	<i>O</i> Vocat.	a	r. c. i. um.	a. c. e. i. l. n. o. r. s. t. x.	us u	es
Pluraliter.	<i>From</i> Ablat.	â	o	e i	u	e

Pluraliter.	<i>The</i> Nom.	z	i a.	es a	us ua	es
	<i>Of</i> Gen.	arum	orum	um ium	uum	erum
	<i>To</i> Dativ.	is abus	is	ibus	ibus ubus	ebus
	<i>The</i> Accus.	as	os a	es a	us ua	es
	<i>O</i> Vocat.	æ	i	es a	us ua	es
	<i>From</i> Ablat.	is abus	is	ibus	ibus ubus	ebus

A 2

Nouns

Nouns of the first Declension are declined like *Musa*:
and are most usually Fem. not increasing.

Singulariter.	Nominativo	a	as,	Nom. hæc Mus-a	a Song
	Genitivo	æ		Genit. hujus Mus-æ	of a Song
	Dativo	æ		Dat. huic Mus-æ	to a Song
	Accusativo	am		Accus. hanc Mus-am	the Song
	Vocativo	a		Vocat. ô Mus-a	ô Song.
	Ablativo	a		Ablat. ab hac Mus a	from a Song
Pluraliter.	Nominativo	æ	as,	Nom. hæ Mus-æ	Songs
	Genitivo	arum		Genit. harum Mus-arum	of Songs
	Dativo	is		Dativ. his Mus-is	to Songs
	Accusativo	as		Accus. has Mus-as	the Songs
	Vocativo	æ		Vocat. ô Mus-æ	ô Songs
	Ablativo	is		Ablat. ab his Mus-is	From Songs

Nouns of the second Declens. in *r*, are Masculines
usually not increasing, like *Magister*.

Singulariter.	Nominativo	r	as,	Nom. hic Magist-er.	a Master
	Genitivo	ri		Gen. hujus Magist-ri	of a Master
	Dativo	ro		Dat. huic Magist-ro	to a Master
	Accusativo	rum		Acc. hunc Magist-rum	the Master
	Vocativo	r		Vocat. ô Magist-er	ô Master
	Ablativo	ro		Abl. ab hoc Magist-ro	from a Master
Pluraliter.	Nominativo	ri	as,	Nom. hi Magist-ri	Masters
	Genitivo	rorum		Gen. horum Magist-rorum	of Masters
	Dativo	ris		Dativ. his Magist-ris	to Masters
	Accusativo	ros		Accus. hos Magist-ros	the Masters
	Vocativo	ri		Vocat. ô Magist-ri	ô Masters
	Ablativo	ris		Ablat. ab his Magist-ris	from Masters.

Note that *um* in the first four Declensions is figurative: for *arum*, in the first; *orum*, in the second; *ium*, in the third; & *uum*, in the fourth, *Arædum*, for *Arædarum*; *Deum*, for *Deorum*; &c.

Nouns of the second Declension in *us*, are Masculines, not increasing, declined like *Dominus*.

Singulariter	Nominat.	us	as	Nomin.	hic Domin-us	a Lord
	Genit.	i		Genit.	hujus Domin-i	of a Lord
	Dativ.	o		Dativ.	huic Domin-o	to a Lord
	Accusat.	um		Accus.	hunc Domin-um	the Lord
	Vocat.	e		Vocat.	ô Domin-e	ô Lord
	Ablat.	o		Ablat.	ab hoc Domin-o	from a Lord
Pluraliter	Nominat.	i	as	Nomin.	hi Domin-i	Lords
	Genit.	orum		Gen.	horum Domin-orum	of Lords
	Dativ.	is		Dat.	his Domin-is	to Lords
	Accusat.	os		Accus.	hos Domin-os	the Lords
	Vocat.	i		Voc.	ô Domin-i	ô Lords
	Ablat.	is		Abl.	ab his Domin-is	from Lords

Nouns of the second Declension in *um*, are Neuters, and declined like *Regnum*.

Singulariter	Nominat.	um	as	Nominat.	hoc Regn-um	a Kingdom
	Genit.	i		Genit.	hujus Regn-i	of a Kingdom
	Dativ.	o		Dat.	huic Regn-o	to a Kingdom
	Accus.	um		Accus.	hoc Regn-um	the Kingdom
	Vocat.	um		Vocat.	ô Regn-um	ô Kingdom
	Ablat.	o		Ablat.	ab hoc Regn-o	from a Kingdom
Pluraliter	Nominat.	a	as	Nominat.	hæc Regn-a	Kingdoms
	Genit.	orum		Gen.	horum Regn-orum	of Kingdoms
	Dativ.	is		Dat.	his Regn-is	to Kingdoms
	Accus.	a		Accus.	hæc Regn-a	the Kingdoms
	Vocat.	a		Vocat.	ô Regn-a	ô Kingdoms
	Ablat.	is		Ablat.	ab his Regn-is	from Kingdoms

When the Nominative ends in *us* of the second Declension, the Vocative shall end in *e*, except *Deus* that makes Vocative, ô *Deus*.

Six Nouns in *us*, viz. *Agnus*, *Lucus*, *Vulgus*, *Populus*, *Chorus*, & *Fluvius*, make their Vocative in *e* or *us*: as,

Singulariter.	Nominat.	us	as,	Nomin.	hic Agn-us	a Lamb.
	Gen.	i		Genit.	hujus Agn-i	of a Lamb
	Dativ.	o		Dativ.	huic Agn-o	to a Lamb
	Accus.	um		Accus.	hunc Agn-um	the Lamb.
	Vocat.	{ e us }		Vocat.	ô Agn. { e us }	ô Lamb
	Ablat.	o		Ablat.	ab hoc Agn-o	from a Lamb
Pluraliter.	Nominat.	i	as,	Nominat.	hi Agn-i	Lambs
	Gen.	orum		Gen.	horum Agn-orum	of Lambs
	Dativ.	is		Dativ.	his Agn-is	to Lambs
	Accus.	os		Accus.	hos Agn-os	the Lambs
	Vocat.	i		Vocat.	ô Agn-i	ô Lambs
	Ablat.	is		Ablat.	ab his Agn-is	from Lambs.

Nouns in *ius* make their Vocative to end in *i*; and are declined like *Filius*, thus:

Singulariter.	Nominat.	ius	as,	Nominat.	hic Fil-ius	a Son
	Genit.	ii		Genit.	hujus Fil-ii	of a Son
	Dativ.	io		Dativ.	huic Fil-io	to a Son
	Accusat.	ium		Accus.	hunc Fil-ium	the Son
	Vocat.	i		Voca.	ô Fil-i	ô Son
	Ablat.	io		Ablat.	ab hoc Fil-io	from a Son
Pluraliter.	Nominat.	ii	as,	Nominat.	hi Fil-ii	Sons
	Genit.	iorum		Genit.	horum Fil-iorum	of Sons
	Dativ.	iis		Dativ.	his Fil-iis	to Sons
	Accus.	ios		Accus.	hos Fil-ios	the Sons
	Vocat.	ii		Vocativ.	ô Fil-ii	ô Sons
	Ablat.	iis		Ablat.	ab his Fil-iis	from Sons

us facit *e*, quinto, sed *ius* deperdit *us* indé.

us makes *e*, in the Vocative: but *ius* leaves out *us*, & is, *i*, in the Vocative singular.

Nouns of the third Declension of the Masculine, Feminine, Common of two, Common of three, and doubtfull, are declined like *Lapis*.

Singulariter	Nomina.	<i>divers</i>	as,	Nominat. hic Lap-is	<i>a Stone</i>
	Genit.	<i>is</i>		Genit. hujus Lapid-is	<i>of a Stone</i>
	Dativ.	<i>i</i>		Dativ. huic Lapid-i	<i>to a Stone</i>
	Accus.	<i>em</i>		Accus. hunc Lapid-em	<i>the Stone</i>
	Vocat.	<i>like Nom.</i>		Vocat. ô Lapid-is	<i>ô Stone</i>
	Ablat.	<i>e</i>		Ablat. ab hoc Lapid-e	<i>from a Stone</i>
Pluraliter	Nominat.	<i>es</i>	as,	Nominat. hi Lapid-es	<i>Stones</i>
	Genit.	<i>um</i>		Gen. horum Lapid-um	<i>of Stones</i>
	Dativ.	<i>ibus</i>		Dativ. his Lapid-ibus	<i>to Stones</i>
	Accus.	<i>es</i>		Accus. hos Lapid-es	<i>the Stones</i>
	Vocat.	<i>es</i>		Vocativ. ô Lapid-es	<i>ô Stones</i>
	Ablat.	<i>ibus</i>		Ablat. ab his Lapid-ibus	<i>from Stones</i>

Nouns of the third Declension of the Neuter Gender are declined like *Caput*.

Singulariter	Nominat.	<i>Divers</i>	as,	Nominat. hoc Capu-t	<i>a head</i>
	Genit.	<i>is</i>		Gen. hujus Capit-is	<i>of a head</i>
	Dativ.	<i>i</i>		Dativ. huic Capit-i	<i>to a head</i>
	Accus.	<i>like Nom.</i>		Accus. hoc Capu-t	<i>the head</i>
	Vocat.	<i>like Nom.</i>		Vocat. ô Capu-t	<i>ô head</i>
	Ablat.	<i>e</i>		Ablat. ab hoc Capit-e	<i>from a head</i>
Pluraliter	Nominat.	<i>a</i>	as,	Nominat. hæc Capit-a	<i>heads</i>
	Genit.	<i>um</i>		Gen. horum Capit-um	<i>of heads</i>
	Dativ.	<i>ibus</i>		Dativ. his Capit-ibus	<i>to heads</i>
	Accus.	<i>a</i>		Accus. hæc Capit-a	<i>the heads</i>
	Vocat.	<i>a</i>		Vocat. ô Capit-a	<i>ô heads</i>
	Ablat.	<i>ibus</i>		Ablat. ab his Capit-ibus	<i>from heads</i>

Nouns of the Neuter Gender, make the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative singular alike; and in the plural they end in *a* except; *Ambo* and *duo*, which end in *o*.

Nouns of the fourth Declension are Masculines and Feminines in *us*, not increasing, and are declined like *Manus*.

Singulariter	Nominat.	us	as	Nominat. hæc Man-us	a hand
	Genit.	us		Genit. huius Man-ûs	of a hand
	Dativ.	ui		Dativ. huic Man-ui	to a hand
	Accus.	um		Accus. hanc Man-um	the hand
	Vocat.	us		Vocat. ô Man-us	ô hand
	Ablat.	u		Ablat. ab hac Man-u	from a hand
Pluraliter	Nominat.	us	as	Nominat. hæc Man-us	hands
	Gen.	uum		Genit. harum Man-uum	of hands
	Dativ.	ibus		Dativ. his Man-ibus	to hands
	Accus.	us		Accusat. has Man-us	the hands
	Vocat.	us		Vocat. ô Man-us	ô hands
	Ablat.	ibus		Ablat. ab his Man-ibus	from hands

Nouns of the fourth Declension of the Neuter are declined like *Cornu*.

Singulariter	Nominat.	u	as	Nominat. hoc Corn-u	a horn
	Genit.	u		Genit. huius Corn-u	of a horn
	Dativ.	u		Dativ. huic Corn-u	to a horn
	Accus.	u		Accus. hoc Corn-u	the horn
	Vocat.	u		Vocat. ô Corn-u	ô horn
	Ablat.	u		Ablat. ab hoc Cornu	from a horn
Pluraliter	Nominat.	ua	as	Nominat. hæc Corn-ua	horns
	Genit.	uum		Genit. horum Corn-uum	of horns
	Dativ.	ibus		Dativ. his Corn-ibus	to horns
	Accus.	ua		Accus. hæc Corn-ua	the horns
	Vocat.	ua		Vocat. ô Corn-ua	ô horns
	Ablat.	ibus		Ablat. ab his Corn-ibus	from horns

Nouns

Nouns of the fifth Declension are commonly Feminines, increasing long, and declined like *Meridies* and *Facies*.

Singulariter	Nominat.	es	as,	Nom. hic Meridi-es	<i>Noon-tide</i>
	Genit.	ei		Gen. hujus Meridi-ei	<i>of Noon-tide</i>
	Dativ.	ei		Dat. huic Meridi-ei	<i>to Noon-tide</i>
	Accus.	em		Acc. hunc Meridi-em	<i>the Noon-tide</i>
	Vocat.	es		Voc. ô Meridi-es	<i>ô Noon-tide</i>
	Ablat.	e		Abl. ab hoc Meridi e	<i>from Noon-tide</i>
Pluraliter	Nominat.	es	as,	Nom. hi Meridi-es	<i>Noon-tides</i>
	Genit.	erum		Gen. horû Meridi erum	<i>of Noon-tides</i>
	Dat.	ebus		Dat. his Meridi-ebus	<i>to Noon-tides</i>
	Accus.	es		Accus. hos Meridi-es	<i>the Noon-tides</i>
	Vocat.	es		Vocat. ô Meridi-es	<i>ô Noon-tides</i>
	Ablat.	ebus		Abl. ab his Meridi-ebus	<i>from Noon-tides</i>

Another Example of the fifth Declension;
viç. Facies.

Singulariter	Nominat.	es	as,	Nominat. hæc Faci-es	<i>a Face</i>
	Genit.	ei		Genit. hujus Faci-ei	<i>of a Face</i>
	Dativ.	ei		Dativ. huic Faci-ei	<i>to a Face</i>
	Accus.	em		Accus. hanc Faci-em	<i>the Face</i>
	Vocat.	es		Vocat. ô Faci-es	<i>ô Face</i>
	Ablat.	e		Abl. ab hac Faci e	<i>from a Face</i>
Pluraliter	Nominat.	es	as,	Nominat. hæc Faci-es	<i>Faces</i>
	Gen.	erum		Gen. harum Facie-rum	<i>of Faces</i>
	Dat.	ebus		Dativ. his Faci-ebus	<i>to Faces</i>
	Accus.	es		Accus. has Faci-es	<i>the Faces</i>
	Vocat.	es		Vocat. ô Faci-es	<i>ô Faces</i>
	Ablat.	ebus		Abl. ab his Faci-ebus	<i>from Faces</i>

The Endings of each case in every Declension.

The Genitive singular of

N. B. the	1.	in		a	as,	Musæ.
	2.			i		Magistri.
	3.			is		Lapidis.
	4.			ûs, u		Manûs, Cornu.
	5.			ei		Faciei.

The Dative singular of

the	1.	in		a	as,	Musæ.
	2.			o		Magistro.
	3.			i		Lapidi.
	4.			ui, u		Manui, Cornu.
	5.			ei		Faciei.

The Accusative singular of

the	1.	in		am	as,	Musam.
	2.			um		Magistrum.
	3.			em		Lapidem, Navim.
	4.			im		
	5.			um, u		Manum, Cornu.
				em		Faciem.

N. B. The Vocative singular, is like the Nominative in all Declensions, save in the 2^d, where it is not, if the Nominative end in *us*, or *iur*.

The Ablative singular of

the	1.	in		a	as,	Musâ.
	2.			o		Magistro.
	3.			e, i.		Lapide, tristi.
	4.			u		Manu, Cornu.
	5.			e		Facie.

The Nominative plural of

the	1.	in		a	as,	Musæ.
	2.			i		Magistri.
	3.			es, a		Lapides, Capita.
	4.			us, ua		Manus, Cornua.
	5.			es		Facies.

The endings of each case in every Declension.

The Genitive plural of

the	1.	in	arum	as,	Mufarum.
	2.		orum		Magiftrorum.
	3.		um		Lapidum, triftium.
	4.		ium		Manuum, Cornuum.
	5.		uum		Facierum.

The Dative plural of

the	1.	in	is	as,	Mufis.
	2.		is		Magiftris.
	3.		ibus		Lapidibus.
	4.		bus		Manibus.
	5.		ebus		Faciebus

The Accufative plural of

the	1.	in	as	as,	Mufas.
	2.		os		Magiftros.
	3.		es, a		Lapides, Capita.
	4.		us		Manus, Cornua.
	5.		ua		Facies.

The Vocative plural of

the	1.	in	x	as,	Mufa.
	2.		i		Magiftri.
	3.		es, a		Lapides, Capita.
	4.		us		Manus, Cornua.
	5.		ua		Facies.

The Ablative plural of

the	1.	in	is	as,	Mufis.
	2.		is		Magiftris.
	3.		ibus		Lapidibus.
	4.		bus		Manibus.
	5.		ebus		Faciebus.

Obferve that the Nominative and Vocative plural; and the Dative, and Ablative plural in all Declenfions are alike.

An

**An Example of the first Declension of Nouns that make
their Dative and Ablative plural in abus.**

Singulariter	Nominat.	a.	as,	Nominat. hæc Equ-a	a mare
	Genit.	æ.		Genit. hujus Equ-æ	of a mare
	Dativ.	æ.		Dativ. huic Equ-æ	to a mare
	Accus.	am		Accus. hanc Equ-am	the mare
	Vocat.	a		Vocat. ô Equ-a	ô mare
	Ablat.	â		Ablat. ab hac Equ-â	from a mare

Pluraliter	Nominat.	æ	as,	Nominat. hæ Equ-æ	mares
	Genit.	arum		Genit. harum Equ-arum	of mares
	Dativ.	abus		Dativ. his Equ-abus	to mares
	Accus.	as		Accus. has Equ-as	the mares
	Vocat.	æ		Vocat. ô Equ-æ	ô mares
	Ablat.	abus		Ablat. ab his Equ-abus	from mares

Four Nouns viz. *Dea, Mula, Equa, Liberta*, make their
Dative and Ablative plural. in *abus*, and two Nouns,
Filia and *Nata*, *is*, or *abus*.

**An Example of the fourth Declension of Nouns that end
in *ubus* in the Dative and Ablat. plural.**

Singulariter	Nominat.	us	as,	Nominat. hic Arc-us	a Bowe
	Genit.	ûs		Genit. hujus Arc-ûs	of a Bowe
	Dativ.	ui		Dativ. huic Arc-ui	to a Bowe
	Accus.	um		Accus. hunc Arc-um	the Bowe
	Vocat.	us		Vocat. ô Arc-us	ô Bowe
	Ablat.	u		Ablat. ab hoc Arc u	from a Bowe

Pluraliter	Nominat.	us	as,	Nominat. hi Arc-us	Bowes
	Genit.	uum		Genit. horum Arc-uum	of Bowes
	Dativ.	ubus		Dativ. his Arc-ubus	to Bowes
	Accus.	us		Accusat. hos Arc-us	the Rowes
	Vocat.	us		Vocat. ô Arc-us	ô Bowes
	Ablat.	ubus		Ablat. ab his Arc-ubus	from Bowes

Examples

‘ Examples of the first Declension.’

1. Masculines.

Poëta, a *Poet*.
Lixa, a *Scullion*.
Scriba, a *Scribe*.
Scurra, a *Scoffer*.
Rabula, a *Brawler*.

Athleta, a *Wrestler*.
Bibliopola, a *Book-seller*.
Cometa, a *Blazing star*.
Oenopola, a *Vintner*.
Propheta, a *Prophet*.

2. Feminines.

Fibula, a *Button*.
Acicula, a *Pin*.
Ligula, a *Point*.
Rubecula, a *Robbin red breast*.
Merula, a *Black-bird*.
Tinca, a *Tench*.

Perca, a *Perch*.
Saga, a *Witch*.
Plaga, a *Stroke*.
Virga, a *Rod*.
Cavea, a *Cage*.
Schola, a *School*.

3. Commons of two.

Verna, a *Slave*.
Agricola, a *Husbandman*.
Advena, a *Stranger*.
Auriga, a *Wagoner*.
Indigena, a *Homeling*.

Transfuga, a *Run-away*.
Incola, an *Inhabitant*.
Conviva, a *Guest*.
Homicida, a *Man-slayer*.
Grajugena, a *Grecian*.

4. Doubtfuls.

Talpa, a *Mole*.

Dama, a *Deer*.

5. Adjectives and Substantives.

Musa bona, a *good Muse*.
Garrula Pica, a *chattering Pie*.
Furca ferrea, an *iron Fork*.
Lubrica anguilla, a *slippery Eel*.
Longa Hasta, a *long Pike*.
Nova Virga, a *new Rod*.

Examples

Examples of the second Declension.

1. Masculines.

Puer, eri, a Boy.
 Culter, ri, a knife.
 Aper, pri, a Boar.
 Ager, gri, a Field.
 Armiger, eri, an Esquire.

Pileus, a Cap.
 Procus, a Woer.
 Sponsus, a Bridegroom.
 Digitus, a Finger.
 Fungus, a Mushroom.

2. Feminines.

Cerasus, a Cherry tree.
 Malus, an Apple tree.
 Pirus, a Pear tree.
 Volemus, a Warden tree.
 Sorbus, a Service tree.

Papyrus, Paper.
 Crystallus, Chrystal.
 Synodus, an Assembly.
 Byssus, fine Flax.
 Arcus, Charles-wain.

3. Neuters.

Pomum, an Apple.
 Cerasum, a Cherry.
 Pirum, a Pear.
 Prunum, a Plum.
 Mespilum, a Medlar.

Ovum, an Egg.
 Brachium, an Arm.
 Mentum, a Chin.
 Carpentum, a Coach.
 Scamnum, a Bench.

4. Doubtfuls.

Pampinus, a Vine leaf.
 Paradisus, a Paradise.
 Atomus, a Mote in the Sun.

Grossus, a green Fig.
 Lecythus, an Oyl glass.
 Phaselus, a Barge.

Adjectives and Substantives.

Bonus Magister, a good Master.
 Magnus liber, a great Book.
 Longus gladius, a long sword.
 Honestus vir, an honest man.
 Stultum ingenium, a foolish wit.
 Profundum pelagus, the deep sea.

Examples

Examples of the third Declension.

1. Masculines.

Sal, falis, *Salt.*
 Mugil, ilis, *a Mullet.*
 Pecten, isis, *a Comb.*
 Delphin, inis, *a Dolphin.*
 Dæmon, onis, *a Devil.*
 Leo, onis, *a Lion.*
 Sermo, onis, *a Speech.*
 Brito, onis, *a Britain.*
 Nar, naris, *a Nostril.*
 Crater, eris, *a Goblet.*
 Carcer, eris, *a Prison.*
 Dolor, oris, *Grief.*
 Turtur, uris, *a Turtle.*
 Mas, maris, *a Male.*
 Gigas, antis, *a Giant.*
 Magnes, etis, *a Load-stone.*
 Limes, itis, *a Bound.*

Pes, pedis, *a foot.*
 Crinis, is, *a Hair.*
 Glis, gliris, *a Dormouse.*
 Lapis, idis, *a Stone.*
 Flos, floris, *a Flower.*
 Nepos, otis, *a Nephew.*
 Heros, ois, *a Noble man.*
 Mus, muris, *a Mouse.*
 Lepos, oris, *a Hare.*
 Arabs, abis, *an Arabian.*
 Æthiops, opis, *a Blackmore.*
 Mons, tis, *a Hill.*
 Dens, tis, *a Tooth.*
 Thorax, acis, *Bulk of the body.*
 Vervex, ecis, *a Werber.*
 Calix, icis, *a Cup.*
 Aqualis, is, *an Ewer.*

2. Feminines.

Syndo, onis, *fine Linen.*
 Hirundo, inis, *a Swallow.*
 Imago, inis, *an Image.*
 Lectio, onis, *a Lesson.*
 Caro, carnis, *Flesh.*
 Mater, tris, *a Mother.*
 Arbor, oris, *a tree.*
 Civitas, atis, *a City.*
 Sedes, is, *a Seat.*
 Abies, ietis, *a Fir tree.*
 Pellis, is, *a Skin.*
 Callis, idis, *an Head-piece.*
 Cos, cotis, *a Whetstone.*
 Virtus, tutis, *Virtue.*

Laus, dis, *Praise.*
 Trabs, bis, *a Beam.*
 Hyems, emis, *Winter.*
 Mens, tis, *a Minde.*
 Daps, dapis, *Dainty meat.*
 Pus, puris, *Snivel.*
 Frons, dis, *a Leaf of a tree.*
 Ars, tis, *a Trade.*
 Fax, facis, *a Torch.*
 Lex, legis, *a Law.*
 Radix, icis, *a Root.*
 Vox, vocis, *a Voice.*
 Nux, nucis, *a Nut.*
 Pietas, tatis, *Godliness.*

3. Neuters.

3. Neuters viz. of the third Declension.

Enigma, atis, a Riddle.
 Lac, atis, Milk.
 Cubile, is, a Bed.
 Sinapi, Invar. Mustard.
 Animal, lis, a living Creature.
 Mel, lis, Honey.
 Nomen, inis, a Name.
 Calcar, aris, a Spar.
 Cadaver, eris, a Carcase.
 Hir, Invar. Hollow of the Hand.

Cor, cordis, a Heart.
 Robur, oris, an Oak.
 Vas, vasis, a Vessel.
 Os, oris, a Mouth.
 Os, ossis, a Bone.
 Crus, cruris, a Leg.
 Onus, eris, a Burden.
 Corpus, oris, a Body.
 Caput, itis, a Head.

4. Doubtfulls.

Anas, atis, a Duck.
 Amnis, nis, a River.
 Grus, gruis, a Crane.
 Linter, tris, a Boat.

Buto, onis, an Owl.
 Scrobs, bis, a Ditch.
 Limax, acis, a Snail.
 Culex, icis, a Gnat.

5. Commons of two.

Homo, inis, a Man.
 Hæres, edis, an Heir.
 Testis, is, a Witness.
 Custos, odis, a Keeper.
 Princeps, ipis, A Prince.

Judex, icis, a Judge.
 Vigil, ilis, a Watchman.
 Eques, itis, a Knight.
 Dux, ducis, a Captain.
 Opifex, icis, a Workman.

6. Commons of three.

Mitis, e, Milde.
 Amans, tis, Loving.
 Docens, tis, Teaching.
 Legens, tis, Reading.
 Audiens, tis, Hearing.
 Audax, acis, Bold.
 Mollis, e, Soft.
 Fortis, e, Valiant.

Simplex, icis, Simple.
 Pernix, icis, Swift.
 Atrox, ocis, Cruel.
 Trux, trucis, Fierce.
 Doctior, ius, More learned.
 Dulcior, ius, Sweeter.
 Omnis, e, All.
 Dulcis, e, Sweet.

Adjectives.

Adjectives and Substantives of the third Declension.

Humilis arbor, *a low Tree.*
 Vitis lacrymans, *a bleeding Vine.*
 Caro iners, *unsavoury Flesh.*
 Facinus nobile, *a gallant Exploit.*
 Lex prohibens, *a Law forbidding.*
 Anceps securis, *a two edged Hatchet.*
 Socors miles, *a heartless Souldier.*
 Cicur sus, *a tame Swine.*
 Inops multitudo, *The poor Commons.*
 Animal bipes, *a two-footed living Creature.*
 Defes senex, *an old man sitting still.*
 Grave onus, *a heavy Burden.*
 Humilius genus, *a baser Stock.*

Examples of the fourth Declension.

1. Masculines.

Gradus, <i>a Step.</i>	Flatus, <i>a Blast.</i>
Arcus, <i>a Bow.</i>	Streptus, <i>a Noise.</i>
Versus, <i>a Verse.</i>	Aspectus, <i>a Look.</i>

2. Feminines.

Anus, <i>an old Woman.</i>	Acus, <i>a Needle.</i>
Porticus, <i>a Porch.</i>	Nurus, <i>a Sons wife.</i>
Tribus, <i>a Kindred.</i>	Socrus, <i>a Wives mother.</i>

3. Neuters.

Genu, <i>a Knee.</i>	Veru, <i>a Spit.</i>
Tonitru, <i>Thunder.</i>	Cornu, <i>a Horn.</i>

Examples of the fifth Declension.

Acies, <i>An Edge.</i>	Fides, <i>Faith.</i>
Res, <i>a Thing.</i>	Glacies, <i>Ice.</i>
Species, <i>a Shape.</i>	Macies, <i>Leanness.</i>

Adjectives and Substantives of divers Declensions.

- 1 Candida 4 manus, *a white Hand.*
 3 Cicur 1 columba, *a tame Pigeon.*
 3 Iners 2 Asinus, *an idle Ass.*
 2 Gelidus 3 Fons, *a cold Spring.*
 3 Dulce 2 pomum, *a sweet Apple.*
 1 Squalida 5 Facies, *a nasty Face.*
 3 Hebes 2 ingenium, *a dull Wit.*
 1 Venusta 3 Venus, *a fair Lady.*
 3 Felix 1 sylva, *a fertile Wood.*
 2 Garrulus 3 Percontator, *a prattling Busy-body.*
 3 Auris 1 patula, *an open Ear.*
 3 Impubis 1 gena, *a beardless Cheek.*
 3 Mendax 1 forma, *a lying Beauty.*
 2 Meus 4 vultus 2 amicus, *my friendly Countenance.*
 1 Mea 3 fallax 3 imago, *my deceitfull Image.*
 2 Meum 2 Charum 3 Caput, *my dear Head.*
 2 Trepidus, }
 vel } 1 Dama, *a trembling Deer.*
 1 Trepida. }
 2 Malevolus 3 vetus 1 Poëta, *an old cankered Poet.*
 3 Immanis ac 1 barbara 3 consuetudo, *a cruel and barbarous Custom.*
 3 Hilaris 2 Festus 5 dies, *a merry holy day.*
 2 Lucidus & 3 Splendens 1 planeta, *a light and bright Planet.*
 3 Lucidior & 3 splendidior 1 Luna, *the lighter and brighter Moon.*
 2 Lucidissimus & 2 splendidissimus 3 Sol, *the very light, and very bright Sun.*

If an Adjective hath three terminations, the first is Masculine, the second is Feminine, and the third is Neuter.

If an Adjective hath two endings, the first is Masculine and Feminine, and the second is Neuter.

If a Noun Adjective hath but one ending in a Case, that one ending, is both Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

Nouns Adjectives of three Terminations are declined
like *Bonus, niger, satur, or unus*.

		Mas. Fem. Neut.					Mas. Fem. Neut.		
		1.	2.	3.			1.	2.	3.
Singulariter	Nominat.	us	a	um	as		Bonus	Bona	Bonum
	Genit.	i	æ	i			Boni	Bonæ	Boni
	Dativ.	o	æ	o			Bono	Bonæ	Bono
	Accusat.	um	am	um			Bonum	Bonam	Bonam
	Vocat.	e	a	um			Bone	Bona	Bonum
	Ablat.	o	a	o			Bone	Bonâ	Bono
Pluraliter	Nominat.	i	æ	a	as		Boni	Bonæ	Bona
	Genit.	orum	arum	orum			Bonarum	Bonarum	Bonarum
	Dativ.	is	is	is			Bonis	Bonis	Bonis
	Accus.	os	as	a			Bonos	Bonas	Bona
	Vocat.	i	æ	a			Boni	Bonæ	Bona
	Ablat.	is	is	is			Bonis	Bonis	Bonis
Singulariter	Nominat.	er	ra	rum	as		Niger	Nigra	Nigrum
	Genit.	ri	ræ	ri			Nigri	Nigræ	Nigri
	Dativ.	ro	ræ	ro			Nigro	Nigræ	Nigro
	Accus.	rum	ram	rum			Nigrum	Nigram	Nigrum
	Vocat.	er	ra	rum			Niger	Nigra	Nigrum
	Ablat.	ro	râ	ro			Nigro	Nigrâ	Nigro
Pluraliter	Nominat.	ri	ræ	ra	as		Nigri	Nigræ	Nigra
	Genit.	rorum	rarum	rorum			Nigrorum	Nigrarum	Nigrorum
	Dativ.	ris	ris	ris			Nigris	Nigris	Nigris
	Accusat.	ros	ras	ra			Nigros	Nigras	Nigra
	Vocat.	ri	ræ	ra			Nigri	Nigræ	Nigra
	Ablat.	ris	ris	ris			Nigris	Nigris	Nigris

N. B. Nine Adjectives in *us*, viz. *Unus, totus, solus, ullus, nullus, alius, alter, uter*, and *neuter*; make their Genitives singular in *ius*, their Datives in *i*, and in other cases they end like *Bonus*.

And *Alius* makes *Aliud* in the Neuter, and not *Alium* in the Nominative and Accusative singular.

N. B. All Adjectives of three Terminations end in *us*, *er*, *ur*.

Examples of Adjectives of three Terminations.

		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Singulariter	Nominat.	ur	ra	rum	as,	Satur	Satura	Saturum
	Genit.	ri	ræ	ri		Saturi	Saturæ	Saturi
	Dativ.	ro	ræ	ro		Saturo	Saturæ	Saturo
	Accus.	rum	ram	rum		Saturum	Saturam	Saturum
	Vocat.	ur	ra	rum		Satur	Satura	Saturum
	Ablat.	ro	râ	ro		Saturo	Saturâ	Saturo.
Pluraliter	Nominat.	ri	ræ	ra	as,	Saturi	Saturæ	Satura
	Genit.	rorum	rarum	rorum		Saturorum	Saturarum	Saturorum
	Dativ.	ris	ris	ris		Saturis	Saturis	Saturis
	Accusat.	ros	ræs	ra		Saturos	Saturas	Satura
	Vocat.	ri	ræ	ra		Saturi	Saturæ	Satura
	Ablat.	ris	ris	ris		Saturis	Saturis	Saturis
Singulariter	Nominat.	us	a	um	as,	Unus	Una	Unum
	Genit.	ius	ius	ius		Unius	Unius	Unius
	Dativ.	i	i	i		Uni	Uni	Uni
	Accus.	um	am	um		Unum	Unam	Unum
	Vocat.	e	a	um		Une	Una	Unum
	Ablat.	o	â	o		Uno	Unâ	Uno
Pluraliter	Nominat.	i	æ	a	as,	Uni	Unæ	Ina
	Genit.	orum	arum	orum		Unorum	Unarum	Inorum
	Dativ.	is	is	is		Unis	Unis	Inis
	Accus.	os	as	a		Unos	Unas	Ina
	Vocat.	i	æ	a		Uni	Unæ	Ina
	Ablat.	is	is	is		Unis	Unis	Inis

Ullus, Nullus, Alius, Alter, Uter and *Neuter* want the Vocative case; but *Unus, Totus, Solus*, and all other Adjectives have it.

At fi tres variant voces, *Sacer*, ut *sacra, sacrum*.

Vox prima est mas, altera fœmina, tertia Neutrum.

Nouns Adjectives of one Termination in *x*, are declined like *Felix*.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Singulariter	Nominat.	x	x	x	Felix	Felix	Felix
	Genit.	cis	cis	cis	Felici	Felici	Felici
	Dativ.	ci	ci	ci	Felici	Felici	Felici
	Accus.	cem	cem	x	Felicem	Felicem	Felix
	Vocat.	x	x	x	Felix	Felix	Felix
	Ablat.	{ ce ci	{ ce ci	{ ce ci	Feli- { ce ci	Feli { ce ci	Felice Felici
Pluraliter	Nominat.	ces	ces	cia	Felices	Felices	Felicia
	Genit.	cium	cium	cium	Feliciū	Feliciū	Feliciū
	Dativ.	cibus	cibus	cibus	Felicibus	Felicibus	Felicibus
	Accus.	ces	ces	cia	Felices	Felices	Felicia
	Vocat.	ces	ces	cia	Felices	Felices	Felicia
	Ablat.	cibus	cibus	cibus	Felicibus	Felicibus	Felicibus
Singulariter	Nominat.	ns	ns	ns	Prudens	Prudens	Prudens
	Genit.	ntis	ntis	ntis	Prudentis	Prudentis	Prudentis
	Dativ.	nti	nti	nti	Prudenti	Prudenti	Prudenti
	Accus.	ntem	ntem	ns	Prudentem	Prudentem	Prudens
	Vocat.	ns	ns	ns	Prudens	Prudens	Prudens
	Abl.	{ nte nti	{ nte nti	{ nte nti	Prude { nte nti	Prude { nte nti	Prude { nte nti
Pluraliter	Nom.	ntes	ntes	ntia	Prudentes	Prudentes	Prudentia
	Gen.	ntium	ntium	ntium	Prudentium	Prudentiū	Prudentium
	Dat.	ntibus	ntibus	ntibus	Prudentibus	Prudentib9	Prudentibus
	Accus.	ntes	ntes	ntia	Prudentes	Prudentes	Prudentia
	Voc.	ntes	ntes	ntia	Prudentes	Prudentes	Prudentia
	Ablat.	ntibus	ntibus	ntibus	Prudentibus	Prudentib9	Prudentibus

Adjectives of one Termination end commonly in *x*, *s*, *r*: as *Felix*, *Prudens*, *Solers*, *Vetus*, *Par*, &c.

Adjectiva unam duntaxat habentia vocem, &c.

Examples of Adjectives of one Termination.

Masc. Fem. Neut.				Masc. Fem. Neut.			
Singulariter	Nom.	rs	rs	rs	Solers	Solers	Solers
	Gen.	rtis	rtis	rtis	Solertis	Solertis	Solertis
	Dativ.	rti	rti	rti	Solerti	Solerti	Solerti
	Accus.	rtem	rtem	rs	Solertem	Solertem	Solers
	Vocat.	rs	rs	rs	Solers	Solers	Solers
	Abl.	{rte rti}	{rte rti}	{rte rti}	Sole {rte rti}	Sole {rte rti}	Sole {rte rti}
Pluraliter	Nom.	rtes	rtes	rtia	Solertes	Solertes	Solertia
	Gen.	rtium	rtium	rtium	Solertium	Solertium	Solertium
	Dat.	rtibus	rtibus	rtibus	Solertibus	Solertibus	Solertibus
	Acc.	rtes	rtes	rtia	Solertes	Solertes	Solertia
	Voc.	rtes	rtes	rtia	Solertes	Solertes	Solertia
	Abl.	rtibus	rtibus	rtibus	Solertibus	Solertibus	Solertibus
Singulariter	Nom.	r	r	r	Par	Par	Par
	Gen.	ris	ris	ris	Paris	Paris	Paris
	Dat.	ri	ri	ri	Pari	Pari	Pari
	Acc.	rem	rem	r	Parem	Parem	Par
	Vocat.	r	r	r	Par	Par	Par
	Abl.	{re ri}	{re ri}	{re ri}	Pa {re ri}	Pa {re ri}	Pa {re ri}
Pluraliter	Nom.	res	res	ria	Pares	Pares	Paria
	Genit.	rium	rium	rium	Parium	Parium	Parium
	Dativ.	ribus	ribus	ribus	Paribus	Paribus	Paribus
	Accus.	res	res	ria	Pares	Pares	Paria
	Vocat.	res	res	ria	Pares	Pares	Paria
	Ablat.	ribus	ribus	ribus	Paribus	Paribus	Paribus

Adjectives that end in *s* of one Termination, have usually a consonant before *s*; as *Iners*, *Solers*, *Ingens*, *Prudens*, *Splendens*, *Amans*, &c. except *Vetus*, &c.

Nouns,

Nouns Adjectives of two Terminations are declined like *Tristis*.

	Masc. Fem. Neut.				Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Singulariter	Nominat.	is	is	e	as,	Tristis	Tristis	Triste
	Genit.	is	is	is		Tristis	Tristis	Tristis
	Dativ.	i	i	i		Tristi	Tristi	Tristi
	Accusat.	em	em	e		Tristem	Tristem	Triste
	Vocat.	is	is	e		Tristis	Tristis	Triste
	Ablat.	i	i	i		Tristi	Tristi	Tristi.
Pluraliter	Nominat.	es	es	ia	as,	Tristes	Tristes	Tristia
	Genit.	ium	ium	ium		Tristium	Tristium	Tristium
	Dativ.	ibus	ibus	ibus		Tristibus	Tristibus	Tristibus
	Accuf.	es	es	ia		Tristes	Tristes	Tristia
	Vocat.	es	es	ia		Tristes	Tristes	Tristia
	Ablat.	ibus	ibus	ibus		Tristibus	Tristibus	Tristibus.
Singulariter	Nominat.	ior	ior	ius	as,	Tristior	Tristior	Tristius
	Genit.	ioris	ioris	ioris		Tristioris	Tristioris	Tristioris
	Dativ.	iori	iori	iori		Tristiori	Tristiori	Tristiori
	Accuf.	iorem	iorē	ius		Tristiozem	Tristiozem	Tristius
	Vocat.	ior	ior	ius		Tristior	Tristior	Tristius
	Abl.	{ iore iori }	{ iore iori }	{ iore iori }		Trist { iore iori }	Trist { iore iori }	Trist { iore iori.
Pluraliter	Nom.	iores	iores	iora	as,	Tristiores	Tristiores	Tristiora
	Gen.	iorum	iorum	iorum		Tristiorum	Tristiorum	Tristiorum
	Dativ.	ioribus	ioribus	ioribus		Tristioribus	Tristioribus	Tristioribus
	Accuf.	iores	iores	iora		Tristiores	Tristiores	Tristiora
	Vocat.	iores	iores	iora		Tristiores	Tristiores	Tristiora
	Ablat.	ioribus	ioribus	ioribus		Tristioribus	Tristioribus	Tristioribus.

Adjectives of two Terminations end in *is*, & *ior*: *is* makes *e*, & *ior* makes *ius*, in the Neuter Gender.

Sub geminâ sî voce cadant, velut Omnis, & Omne, &c.

An Example of Nouns Adjectives of three Terminations, and three Articles.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Singulariter	Nominat.	er	ris	re	hic Celer hæc Celeris hoc Celere, or, hic & —hæc Celeris, & hoc Celere	
	Genit.	ris	ris	ris	Celeris	Celeris
	Dativ.	ri	ri	ri	Celeri	Celeri
	Accus.	rem	rem	re	Celerem	Celerem
	Vocat.	er	ris	re	Celer	Celeris
	Abl.	ri	ri	ri	Celeri	Celeri

Pluraliter	Nominat.	res	res	ria	Celeres	Celeres	Celeria
	Genit.	rium	rium	rium	Celerium	Celerium	Celerium
	Dativ.	ribus	ribus	ribus	Celeribus	Celeribus	Celeribus
	Accus.	res	res	ria	Celeres	Celeres	Celeria
	Vocat.	res	res	ria	Celeres	Celeres	Celeria
	Ablat.	ribus	ribus	ribus	Celeribus	Celeribus	Celeribus

Adjectives are compared by putting before them in English

For the Positive	for the	Comparative	for the	Superlative
as hard.		more ,		{ most,
		more hard,		{ very,
Or at their ends putting,		er,		{ est
as hard.		harder.		{ most } hard,
				{ very } hardest.

Adjectives are compared in Latine, by changing the first case of their Positive ending in i,

Positive,	Compar.	Superl.
as Docti	into { ior	{ iſſimus
	{ ius	{ iſſima
Doctus	Docti { ior	{ iſſimum
	{ ius	Doctiſſimus.
Except: { er } which makes { ior	{ ihor	{ erriſſimus
{ ilis }		{ illiſſimus.

Termi,

Terminations of Adjectives through the three degrees of Comparison.

	Posit.	<i>Doctus.</i> <i>Tener.</i> <i>Dulcis.</i> <i>Felix.</i> <i>Prudens.</i> <i>Solers.</i>	Comp.	Superl.
Nom.	{ us, er, is a, is am, e }	x, ns, rs.	{ ior ior ius }	{ mus ma mum }
Gen.	{ i æ i }	is	ioris	{ mi mæ mi }
Dat.	{ o æ o }	i	iori	{ mo mæ mo }
Acc.	{ um am um }	em e, x, ns, rs.	{ iorem iorem ius }	{ mum mam num }
Voc.	{ e er is a is um e }	x, ns, rs.	{ ior ior ius }	{ me ma num }
Abl.	{ o â o }	i e i	{ iore iori }	{ mo mâ mo }
Nom.	{ i æ a }	{ es es ia }	{ iores iores iora }	{ mi mæ ma }
Gen.	{ orum arum orum }	ium	iorum	{ morum marum morum }
Dativ.	is	ibus	ioribus	mis
Acc.	{ os as a }	{ es es ia }	{ iores iores iora }	{ mos mas ma }
Vocat.	like the Nominative.			
Ablat.	is	ibus	ioribus	mis

1. An Example of Adjectives of three Terminations.

	<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Compar.</i>	<i>Superlat.</i>
Singulariter	M. Doctus	Doctior	Doctissimus
	N. F. Docta	Doctior	Doctissima
	N. Doctum	Doctius	Doctissimum
	M. Docti	Doctioris	Doctissimi
	G. F. Doctæ	Doctioris	Doctissimæ
	N. Docti	Doctioris	Doctissimi
	M. Docto	Doctiori	Doctissimo
	D. F. Doctæ	Doctiori	Doctissimæ
	N. Docto	Doctiori	Doctissimo
	M. Doctum	Doctiorem	Doctissimum
	A. F. Doctam	Doctiorem	Doctissimam
	N. Doctum	Doctius	Doctissimum
	M. Docte	Doctior	Doctissime
	V. F. Docta	Doctior	Doctissima
	N. Doctum	Doctius	Doctissimum
	M. Docto	Doctiore, vel ri	Doctissimo
	A. F. Doctâ	Doctiore, vel ri	Doctissimâ
	N. Docto	Doctiore, vel ri	Doctissimo
Pluraliter	M. Docti	Doctiores	Doctissimi
	N. F. Doctæ	Doctiores	Doctissimæ
	N. Docta	Doctiora	Doctissima
	M. Doctorum	Doctorum	Doctissimorum
	G. F. Doctarum	Doctorum	Doctissimarum
	N. Doctorum	Doctorum	Doctissimorum
	D. M.F.N. Doctis	Doctioribus	Doctissimis
	M. Doctos	Doctiores	Doctissimos
	A. F. Doctas	Doctiores	Doctissimas
	N. Docta	Doctiora	Doctissima
	M. Docti	Doctiores	Doctissimi
	V. F. Doctæ	Doctiores	Doctissimæ
	N. Docta	Doctiora	Doctissima
	A. M.F.N. Doctis	Doctioribus	Doctissimis

An Example of Adjectives of two Terminations.

	<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Superl.</i>
Singulariter	M. <i>Dulcis</i>	<i>Dulcior</i>	<i>Dulcissimus</i>
	N. F. <i>Dulcis</i>	<i>Dulcior</i>	<i>Dulcissima</i>
	N. <i>Dulce</i>	<i>Dulcius</i>	<i>Dulcissimum</i>
	M. <i>Dulcis</i>	<i>Dulcioris</i>	<i>Dulcissimi</i>
	G. F. <i>Dulcis</i>	<i>Dulcioris</i>	<i>Dulcissimæ</i>
	N. <i>Dulcis</i>	<i>Dulcioris</i>	<i>Dulcissimi</i>
	M. <i>Dulci</i>	<i>Dulciori</i>	<i>Dulcissimo</i>
	D. F. <i>Dulci</i>	<i>Dulciori</i>	<i>Dulcissimæ</i>
	N. <i>Dulci</i>	<i>Dulciori</i>	<i>Dulcissimo</i>
	M. <i>Dulcem</i>	<i>Dulciorem</i>	<i>Dulcissimum</i>
	A. F. <i>Dulcem</i>	<i>Dulciorem</i>	<i>Dulcissimam</i>
	N. <i>Dulce</i>	<i>Dulcius</i>	<i>Dulcissimum</i>
	M. <i>Dulcis</i>	<i>Dulcior</i>	<i>Dulcissime</i>
	V. F. <i>Dulcis</i>	<i>Dulcior</i>	<i>Dulcissima</i>
	N. <i>Dulce</i>	<i>Dulcius</i>	<i>Dulcissimum</i>
Pluraliter	M. <i>Dulci</i>	<i>Dulciore, vel ri</i>	<i>Dulcissimo</i>
	A. F. <i>Dulci</i>	<i>Dulciore, vel ri</i>	<i>Dulcissimæ</i>
	N. <i>Dulci</i>	<i>Dulciore, vel ri</i>	<i>Dulcissimo</i>
	M. <i>Dulces</i>	<i>Dulciores</i>	<i>Dulcissimi</i>
	N. F. <i>Dulces</i>	<i>Dulciores</i>	<i>Dulcissimæ</i>
	N. <i>Dulcia</i>	<i>Dalciora</i>	<i>Dulcissima</i>
	M. <i>Dulcium</i>	<i>Dulciorum</i>	<i>Dulcissimorum</i>
	G. F. <i>Dulcium</i>	<i>Dulciorum</i>	<i>Dulcissimarum</i>
	N. <i>Dulcium</i>	<i>Dulciorum</i>	<i>Dulcissimorum</i>
	D. M. F. N. <i>Dulcibus</i>	<i>Dulcioribus</i>	<i>Dalcissimis</i>
	M. <i>Dulces</i>	<i>Dulciores</i>	<i>Dulcissimos</i>
	A. F. <i>Dulces</i>	<i>Dulciores</i>	<i>Dulcissimas</i>
	N. <i>Dulcia</i>	<i>Dulciora</i>	<i>Dulcissima</i>
	V.	Vocative like the Nominative.	
	A.	Ablative like the Dative.	

An Example of Adjectives of one Termination.

	<i>Posit.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Superlat.</i>
Singulariter	M. Felix	Felicior	Felicissimus
	N. F. Felix	Felicior	Felicissima
	N. Felix	Felicius	Felicissimum
	M. Felicis	Felicioris	Felicissimi
	G. F. Felicis	Felicioris	Felicissimæ
	N. Felicis	Felicioris	Felicissimi
	M. Felici	Felicioni	Felicissimo
	D. F. Felici	Felicioni	Felicissimæ
	N. Felici	Felicioni	Felicissimo
	M. Felicem	Feliciozem	Felicissimum
	A. F. Felicem	Feliciozem	Felicissimam
	N. Felix	Felicius	Felicissimum
	M. Felix	Felicior	Felicissime
	V. F. Felix	Felicior	Felicissima
	N. Felix	Felicius	Felicissimum
	M. Felice, vel ci	Felicioze, vel ri	Felicissimo
	A. F. Felice, vel ci	Felicioze, vel ri	Felicissima
	N. Felice, vel ci	Felicioze, vel ri	Felicissimo
Pluraliter	M. Felices	Feliciozes	Felicissimi
	N. F. Felices	Feliciozes	Felicissimæ
	N. Felicia	Felicioza	Felicissima
	M. Felicium	Felicionum	Felicissimorum
	G. F. Felicium	Felicionum	Felicissimarum
	N. Felicium	Felicionum	Felicissimorum
	D. M.F.N. Felicibus	Felicionibus	Felicissimis
	M. Felices	Feliciozes	Felicissimos
	A. F. Felices	Feliciozes	Felicissimas
	N. Felicia	Felicioza	Felicissima
	V. Vocative like the Nominative.		
	A. Ablative like the Dative plural.		

The manner of declining Verbs in *o*.

An Example of the first Conjugation.

1	o	Amo	} Indicative {	Present tense, 1 Person singular.
2	as	Amas		Mood { Present tense, 2 Person singular.
3	avi	Amavi		Preterperfect tense, 1 Person singular.
4	are	Amare	} Infinitive Present Tense.	
5	andi	Amandi	Gerund in Di,	
6	ando	Amando	Gerund in Do,	
7	andum	Amandum	Gerund in Dum.	
8	atum	Amatum	First Supine,	
9	atu	Amatu	Latter Supine.	
10	ans	Amans	Participle of the Present tense.	
11	aturus	Amaturus	Participle of the Future in rus.	

An Example of the second Conjugation.

1	eo	Doceo	} Indicative {	Present tense, 1 Person singular. Mood { Present tense, 1 Person singular. Preterperfect tense, 1 Person singular.
2	es	Doces		
3	ui	Docui		
4	ere	Docere	} Infinitive Mood Present tense.	
5	endi	Docendi	Gerund in Di,	
6	endo	Docendo	Gerund in Do,	
7	endum	Docendum	Gerund in Dum.	
8	um	Doctum	First Supine,	
9	u	Doctu	Latter Supine.	
10	ens	Docens	Participle of the Present Tense.	
11	urus	Docturus	Participle of the Future in rus.	

An Example of the third Conjugation ending in *io*.

1	io	Cupio	} Indicative Mood	{ Present tense, 1 Person singular. Present tense 2 Person singular. Preterperf. tense, 1 person singular.
2	is	Cupis		
3	ivi	Cupivi		
4	ere	Cupere	} Infinitive Mood, Present tense.	
5	iendi	Cupiendi	Gerund in Di,	
6	iendo	Cupiendo	Gerund in Do,	
7	iendum	Cupiendum	Gerund in Dum.	
8	itum	Cupitum	First Supine,	
9	itu	Cupitu	Latter Supine.	
10	iens	Cupiens	Participle of the Present tense.	
11	iturus	Cupiturus,	Participle of the Future in rus.	

The

The manner of declining Verbs in o.

An Example of the third Conjugation.

1	o	Lego	} Indicative Mood {	Present tense, 1 Person singular.
2	is	Legis		Present tense, 2 Person singular.
3	i	Legi		Preterperfect tense, 1 Person singular.
4	ere	Legere	Infinitive Mood, Present tense.	
5	endi	Legendi	Gerund in Di,	
6	endo	Legendo	Gerund in Do,	
7	endum	Legendum	Gerund in Dum.	
8	um	Lectum	First Supine.	
9	u	Lectu	Latter Supine.	
10	ens	Legens	Participle of the Present tense.	
11	urus	Lecturus	Participle of the Future in rus.	

An Example of the fourth Conjugation.

1	io	Audio	} Indicative Mood {	Present tense, 1 person singular.
2	is	Audis		Present tense, 2 Person singular.
3	ivi	Audivi		Preterperf. tense, 1 Person singular.
4	ire	Audire	Infinitive Mood, Present tense.	
5	iendi	Audiendi	Gerund in Di,	
6	iendo	Audiendo	Gerund in Do,	
7	iendum	Audiendum	Gerund in Dum.	
8	itum	Auditum	First Supine,	
9	itu	Auditu	Latter Supine.	
10	iens	Audiens	Participle of the Present tense.	
11	iturns	Auditurns	Participle of the Future in rus.	

Except, *Eo* and *Quo*, which are declined thus.

Eo, *is*, *ivi*, *ire*, *eundi*, *eundo*, *eundum*, *itum*, *itu*, *iens*, *iturns*.

Indicative Preterimperfect, *ibam*, not *iebam*, Future, *ibo*, not *iam*.

Gerunds, *eundi*, *eundo*, *eundum*, not *iendi*, *iendo*, *iendum*.

Quo, *quis*, *quivi*, *quire*, *queundi*, *queundo*, *queundum*, *quitum*, *quitu*, *quiens*, *quiturns*.

Indicative Preterimperfect, *Quibam*, not *quiebam*, and in the Indicative Future tense, *Quibo*, not *quam*: Gerunds, *queundi*, *queundo*, *queundum*, not *quiendi*, *quiendo*, *quiendum*.

The Participle present tense of *Eo*, is *iens*. Genitive *euntis*, Dative, *eunti*, &c.

The

The manner of declining Verbs in *or*.

An Example of the first Conjugation.

1	or	Amor	} Indic. Mood.	} Present t. 1 Person singul.
2	{ aris, vel } { are. }	Amaris, v. Amare		
3	{ atus sum } { vel fui. }	Amatus Sum vel fui		} Preterperf. t. 1 Person sing. Infinitive Mood, Present tense. Participle of the Preter tense. Participle of the Future in dus.
4	ari	Amari		
5	atus	Amarus		
6	andus	Amandus		

An Example of the second Conjugation.

1	cor	Docer	} Indic. Mood.	} Present t. 1 Person singular.
2	{ eris, vel } { ere }	Doceris, vel } Docere }		
3	{ us sum } { vel fui }	Doctus sum } vel fui. }		
4	eri	Doceri		
5	us	Doctus		
6	endus	Docendus		

An Example of the third Conjugation.

1	or	Legor	} Indic. Mood	} Present t. 1 Person singular.
2	{ eris, vel }	Legeris v. }		
3	{ ere }	Legere }		} Pret. tense, 1 Person sing. Infinitive Mood, Present tense. Participle of the Preter tense. Participle of the Future in dus.
3	{ us sum }	Lectus }		
4	{ vel fui }	sum vel fui }		
4	i	Legi		
5	us	Lectus		
6	endus	Legendus		

The Terminations of all Persons of Verbs.

{ 1 } { 2 } { 3 }	Person com- monly ends in	} Singul.	{ o, m, r, } { s, ris, re, } { t, tur. }	} Plural.	{ mus, mur, tis, ni, nt, ntur.

The

The manner of declining Verbs in *er*.

An Example of the fourth Conjugation.

1.	ior	Audior	Indicative Mood	Pres. 1 Person sing.
2.	iris vel ire	Audiris vel audire		Pres. 2 Person sing.
3.	itus sum vel fui	Auditus sum vel fui	Infinitive Mood Present tense. Participle of the Preter tense. Participle of the Future in <i>us</i> .	Preter 1 Person sing.
4.	iri	Audiri		
5.	itus	Auditus		
6.	iendus	Audiendus		

Note that a Verb Deponent hath Gerunds and Supines (like a verb in *o*;) and all the four Participles, i.e. Pres.Pret. Fut. in *us*. Fut. in *us*.

The Terminations of the Persons in all Moods and Tenses.

Active singular	1. ends in	2. ends in	3. ends in
Active plural	o, am, em, im, i.	as, es, is, si.	at, et, it.
Active plural	mus.	tis.	nt.
Passive singular	or, ar, er, o, am, em, im, i.	ris, re, es, si, as.	tur, us-r.
Passive plural	mur, i-mus.	mini, i-tis.	ntur, i-nt.

N.B. Verbs passive have no Preterperfect, nor preterplu. in the Indicative Mood; nor Preterperfect, nor preterpluperfect, nor Future tense in the Potential Mood; but these tenses are supplied by the tenses of *Sum*, and the Participle of the Preter tense: as for its own tenses it Forms them from the active by turning *o*, into *or*; as *amo*, *amor*:: *m* into *r*; as *amabam*, *amabar*; *amabo*, *amabor*; *amem*, *amer*; *amarem*, *amarer*.

And the Infinitive Present Tense turns the last *e* into *i*, in all Conjugations; as *amare*, *amari*; *docere*, *doceri*: *audire*, *audiri*; except in the third, where it turns *ere* into *i*, as *legere* is made *legi*.

The Terminations of Verbs in *o*, according to the four Conjugations.

In the Indicative Mood Active.

		1. Ego <i>I</i>	2. Tu <i>Thou</i>	3. Ille <i>He</i>	1. Nos <i>We</i>	2. Vos <i>Ye</i>	3. Illi <i>They</i>
Present tense	Am.	do	{ -st doest	{ -s doth	do	do	do
	Doc.	o	as	at	amus	atis	ant
	Leg.	eo	es	et	emus	etis	ent
	Cap.	o	is	it	imus	itis	{ ant iunt
	Aud.	io	is	it	imus	itis	iunt
Preter- imper- fect.		-ed did	-ed did	-ed did	-ed did	-ed did	-ed did
	1.	abam					
	2.	ebam					
	3.	ebam iebam	bas	bat	bamus	batis	bant
	4.	iebam					
Preter- perfect, tense		have avi	hast hast	hath hath	have have	have have	have have
	1.	ui					
	2.	i					
	3.	ivi	sti	it	imus	stis	{ erant ere
	4.	ivi					
Preter- pluper- fect.		had averam	hadst hadst	had had	had had	had had	had had
	1.	ueram					
	2.	eram					
	3.	iveram	ras	rat	ramus	ratis	rant
	4.	iveram					
Future tense		{ shall or will	{ shalt or wilt	{ shall or will	{ shall or will	{ shall or will	{ shall or will
	1.	abo	bis	bit	bimus	bitis	bunt
	2.	ebo					
	3.	{ am iam	es	et	emus	etis	ent
	4.	iam					

The

The Terminations of Verbs in *or*, according to the 4. Conjugations.

In the Indicative Mood Passive.

	1. Ego <i>I</i> <i>am</i>	2. Tu <i>Thou</i> <i>art</i>	3. Ille <i>He</i> <i>is</i>	1. Nos <i>We</i> <i>are or</i> <i>be</i>	2. Vos <i>Ye</i> <i>are or</i> <i>be</i>	3. Illi <i>They</i> <i>are or</i> <i>be</i>
Present tense	1. or	{ aris are }	{ atur	amur	amini	antur
	2. eor	{ eris ere }	{ etur	emur	emini	entur
	3. or ior	{ eris ere }	{ itur	imur	imini	{ untur iuntur
	4. ior	{ iris ire }	{ itur	imur	imini	iuntur
Preter- imperf. tense	<i>was</i> abar	<i>wast</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>were</i>
	2. ebar					
	3. { ebar iebar	{ baris bare }	{ batur	bamur	bamini	bantur
	4. iebar					
Preter- perfect. tense	<i>have</i> been	<i>hast</i> been	<i>hath</i> been	<i>have</i> been	<i>have</i> been	<i>have</i> been
	1. atus	{ sum	{ es	sumus	{ estis	{ sunt
	2. us	{ fui	{ fuisti	fui	{ fuistis	fuerunt
	3. itus		{ fuit	fui		fuerunt
Preter- pluperf. tense	<i>had</i> been	{ <i>hadst</i> been }	{ <i>had</i> been }	<i>had</i> been	<i>had</i> been	<i>had</i> been
	1. atus	{ eram	{ eras	eramus	{ eratis	{ erant
	2. us	{ fue-	{ fueras	fueramus	{ fueratis	fuerant
	3. itus	{ ramus	{ fuerat			
Future tense	<i>shall or</i> <i>will be</i>	<i>shalt or</i> <i>wilt be</i>	<i>shall or</i> <i>will be</i>	<i>shall or</i> <i>will be</i>	<i>shall or</i> <i>will be</i>	<i>shall or</i> <i>will be</i>
	1. abor	{ beris	{ bitur	bimur	bimini	buntur
	2. ebor	{ bere	{ bitur	emur	emini	entur
	3. { ar iar	{ eris ere }	{ etur			

The Terminations of Verbs in *o*, in the four Conjugations.

In the Imperative Mood Active.

		1.	2.	3.		1.	2.	3.
		Tu	Ille			Nos	Vos	illi
Present tense	1.	Do	Let			Let	Do	Let
		thou	him			us	ye	them
		a	et			emus	ate	ent
		ato	ato				atote	anto
	2.	et	eat			eamus	ete	eant
		eto	eto				etote	ento
		e	at			eamus	ite	ant
		ito	ito				itote	unto
	3.	e	iat			eamus	ite	iant
		ito	ito				itote	iunto
	4.	i	iat			eamus	ite	iant
		ito	ito				itote	iunto

In the Potential Mood Active.

		I	Thou	He	We	Ye	They
Present tense	1.	may em	mayest es	may et	may emus	may etis	may ent
	2.	eam					
	3.	am	as	at	amus	atis	ant
	4.	iam					
Preter- imperf. tense	1.	might arem	mightest	might	might	might	might
	2.	erem					
	3.	erem	res	ret	remus	retis	rent
	4.	irem					
Preter- perfect. tense	1.	might have averim	mightest have	might have	might have	might have	might have
	2.	uerim					
	3.	erim	eris	erit	erimus	eritis	erint
	4.	iverim					

The Terminations of Verbs in *er*, in the four Conjugations.

In the Imperative Mood Passive.

Present tense			1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
			Tu	Ille		Nos	Vos	Illi
			Be	Let		Let us	Be	Let them
			thou	him be		be	ye	be
			1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
or ior			{ are	{ etur		emur	{ amini	{ entor
			{ ator	{ ator			{ aminor	{ antor
			{ ere	{ eatur			{ emini	{ eantur
			2. { etor	{ etor		eamur	{ eminor	{ entor
			{ ere	{ atur			{ imini	{ aatur
			3. { igor	{ itor		amur	{ iminor	{ untor
			{ ere	{ iatur			{ imini	{ iantur
			4. { itor	{ itor		iamur	{ iminor	{ iantur
			{ itor	{ itor		iamur	{ imini	{ iuntor

In the Potentiall Mood Passive.

present tense	1. 2. 3. 4.	I	Thou	He	We	Ye	They
		may be	mayest be	may be	may be	may be	may be
		er	{ eris	etur	emur	emini	entur
		ear	{ ere				
		ar	{ aris	atur	amur	amini	antur
Preter- imper- fect tense	1. 2. 3. 4.	iar	{ are				
		iar	{ are				
Preter- perfect tense	1. 2. 3. 4.	might be	mightest be	might be	might be	might be	might be
		arer	{ eris	etur	emur	emini	entur
		erer	{ ere				
		erer	{ aris	atur	amur	amini	antur
		irer	{ are				
Preter- perfect tense	1. 2. 3. 4.	might have been	mightest have been	might have been	might have been	might have been	might have been
		atus	{ fim	{ fis	{ fit	{ fimus	{ fitis
		us	{ fuerim	{ fue-	{ fue-	{ fuerimus	{ fueritis
		us	{ fuerim	{ fue-	{ fue-	{ fuerimus	{ fueritis
		itus	{ fuerim	{ fue-	{ fue-	{ fuerimus	{ fueritis

The Terminations of Verbs in *u*, in the 4th Conjugations.

In the Potential Mood Active

		1.	2.	3.		1.	2.	3.
		Ego	Tu	Ille		Nos	Vos	Illi
		I	Thou	He		We	Ye	They
		might	mightest	might		might	might	might
		bad	bad	bad		bad	bad	bad
	1.	avissē						
	2.	uissē						
	3.	issē	isses	isset		issēmus	issetis	issent
	4.	ivissē						
Preter-pluperf. tense		ivissē			Pluraliter			
		shall or will	shalt or wilt	shall or will		shall or will	shall or will	shall or will
	1.	avero						
	2.	uero						
	3.	ero	eris	erit		erimus	eritis	erint
	4.	ivero						
Future tense		ivero						

In the Infinitive Mood Active.

Present tense	1.	arc	}	To	First Supine	1.	atum	}	to, for to
	2.	ere				2.	um		
	3.	ere				3.	{ um itum		
	4.	ire				4.	itum		
Preter- perfect & Pte- terplu.	1.	avisse	}	To have or bad	Lat'er Supine	1.	atu	}	to be.
	2.	uisse				2.	u		
	3.	{ isse ivisse				3.	{ u icu		
	4.	ivisse				4.	icu		
Future tense	1.	aturum	}	to hereafter	Parti- ciple of the present tense	1.	ans	}	-ing.
	2.	urum				2.	ens		
	3.	urum				3.	{ ens iens		
	4.	iturum				4.	iens		
Gerunds		of-ing	in-ing	to	Parti- ciple of the Future in rus.	1.	aturus	}	to, about to, ready to, desirous to, All Supines end in
	1.	andi	ando	andum		2.	urus		
	2.	endi	endo	endum		3.	{ urus iturus		
	3.	{ endi iendi	endo iendo	endum iendum		4.	iturus		
	4.	iendi	iendo	iendum		Tum	Tu		
						Sum	Su		
						Xum	Xu		

The

The Terminations of Verbs in *or*, in the 4. Conjugations.

In the Potential Mood Passive.

	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
	Ego	Tu	Ille	Nos	Vos	Illi
	I	Thou	He	We	Ye	They
	<i>might</i>	<i>mightest</i>	<i>might</i>	<i>might</i>	<i>might</i>	<i>might</i>
	<i>had been</i>	<i>had been</i>	<i>had been</i>	<i>had been</i>	<i>had been</i>	<i>had been</i>
Preter-pluperf. tense	1. atus	} <i>essem</i> <i>esses</i> <i>esset</i>	} <i>fuissem</i> <i>fuiesses</i> <i>fuisset</i>	i. <i>essemus</i> <i>essetis</i> <i>essent</i>	} <i>fuissemus</i> <i>fuissetis</i> <i>fuisissent</i>	
	2. us					
	3. us					
	4. itus					
	<i>shall or will be</i>	<i>shalt or wilt be</i>	<i>shall or will be</i>	<i>shall or will be</i>	<i>shall or will be</i>	<i>shall or will be</i>
Future tense	1. atus	} <i>ero</i> <i>eris</i> <i>erit</i>	} <i>fuerio</i> <i>fueris</i> <i>fuerit</i>	i. <i>erimus</i> <i>eritis</i> <i>erint</i>	} <i>fuerimus</i> <i>fueritis</i> <i>fuerint</i>	
	2. us					
	3. us					
	4. itus					

In the Infinitive Mood Passive.

Present tense	1. ari	} <i>to be</i>		Participle of the Preter tense	1. atus	} <i>was</i> } D	
	2. eri				2. us		
	3. i				3. itus		
	4. iri				4. itus		
Preter-perf. & Preter-pluperf. tense	1. atum	} <i>esse</i> } <i>to have</i>	} <i>or</i>	Participle of the Future in <i>das</i> .	1. andus	} <i>to be</i>	
	2. um				2. endus		
	3. itum				3. iendus		
	4. itum				4. iendus		
Future tense	1. atum iri	} <i>to be hereafter</i>					
	2. andum esse						
	3. um iri						
	4. endum esse						

Examples of Verbs in *o*.

Examples of the first Conjugation.

Voco, *to call.*
 Clamo, *to cry.*
 Ambulo, *to walk.*
 Claudico, *to halt.*
 Canto, *to sing.*
 Puto, *to think.*
 Vigilo, *to awake.*
 Expecto, *to wait.*
 Egroto, *to be sick.*
 Exulo, *to be banished.*

Spero, *to hope.*
 Pecco, *to sin.*
 Opto, *to wish.*
 Nego, *to deny.*
 Cesso, *to loiter.*
 Curo, *to regard.*
 Litigo, *to babble.*
 Navigo, *to sail.*
 Vapulo, *to be whipt.*
 Servo, *to keep.*

Examples of the second Conjugation.

Teneo, *to hold.*
 Timeo, *to fear.*
 Studeo, *to study.*
 Lateo, *to lie hid.*
 Taceo, *to be silent.*
 Arceo, *to drive away.*
 Egeo, *to want.*

Censeo, *to think.*
 Moneo, *to admonish.*
 Frigeo, *to be cold.*
 Valeo, *to be in health.*
 Calco, *to be warm.*
 Nigreo, *to wax black.*
 Terreo, *to make afraid.*

Examples of the third Conjugation.

Serpo, *to creep.*
 Linquo, *to leave.*
 Tero, *to wear.*
 Arcesso, *to go to call.*
 Verto, *to turn.*
 Solvo, *to loose.*
 Nexo, *to knit.*
 Fallo, *to deceive.*

Jacio, *to cast.*
 Fodio, *to dig.*
 Fugio, *to shun.*
 Capió, *to take.*
 Pario, *to bring forth.*
 Quatio, *to shake.*
 Statuo, *to appoint.*
 Fluo, *to flow.*

Examples of the fourth Conjugation.

Dormio, *to sleep.*
 Garrio, *to prate.*
 Impedio, *to hinder.*
 Custodio, *to keep.*
 Servio, *to serve.*
 Obedio, *to obey.*

Scio, *to know.*
 Lascivio, *to play the wanton.*
 Munio, *to fence.*
 Mollio, *to soften.*
 Pipio, *to cry Peep.*
 Nutrio, *to nourish.*

Examples

Examples of Verbs in *or*:
Examples of the first Conjugation.

Præcor, to pray.
Suspicio, to suspect.
Confabulor, to chat.
Miror, to wonder.
Osculor, to kiss.
Venor, to hunt.
Veneror, to worship.
Minor, to threaten.
Piscor, to fish.
Testor, to witness.

Rogor, to be asked.
Turbor, to be troubled.
Vastor, to be wasted.
Verberor, to be beaten.
Spolior, to be spoiled.
Vocor, to be called.
Crucior, to be tormented.
Recitor, to be repeated.
Gravor, to be grieved.
Æstimor, to be esteemed.

Examples of the second Conjugation.

Fateor, to confess.
Polliceor, to promise.
Vereor, to fear.
Tueor, to defend.
Mereor, to deserve.
Misereor, to pity.
Moncor, to be advised.

Irrideor, to be mocked.
Absterreor, to be affrighted.
Moveor, to be moved.
Impleor, to be filled.
Misceor, to be mingled.
Habeor, to be accounted.
Timeor, to be feared.

Examples of the third Conjugation.

Sequor, to follow.
Loquor, to speak.
Utor, to use.
Revertor, to return.
Queror, to complain.
Proficiscor, to go.
Labor, to slide.
Promittor, to be promised.

Opprimor, to be oppressed.
Quæror, to be sought.
Extinguor, to be quenched.
Extender, to be stretched out.
Illudor, to be mocked.
Deprehendor, to be catch'd.
Jungor, to be joyned.
Vertor, to be turned.

Examples of the fourth Conjugation.

Mentior, to lie.
Experior, to try.
Blandior, to fawn upon.
Sortior, to cast lots.
Ordior, to begin.
Partior, to divide.

Impedior, to be entangled.
Erudior, to be instructed.
Invenior, to be found.
Punior, to be punished.
Redimior, to be adorned.
Nutrior, to be nourished.

What

What Tenses are formed from the Present tenses,
what from the preterperfect. and what
from the latter Supine?

	Preterimperfect.	{ of the Indicative	Active voice.
	Future tense		
	Present tense	{ of the Imperative	
	Present tense		
	Preterimperfect.	{ of the Potential,	
	Present tense		
	Gerunds.	{ of the Infinitive.	
From the Present tense of the Indicative mood active, is formed the	Participle of the present tense.		
	Present tense	{ of the Indicative.	Passive voice.
	Preterimperfect.		
	Future tense		
	Present tense of the Imperative	{ of the Potential,	
	Present tense		
	Preterimperfect.		
	Present tense of the Infinitive.		
	Participle of the Future in <i>du</i> s.	{	
	Future tense of the Infinitive, viz. -ndum esse.		
	Preterpluperf. of the Indicative.	{ of the Potential.	Active voice.
From the Preterperfect tense of the Indicative mood active, is formed the	Preterperfect.		
	Preterpluperf.		
	Future tense	{ of the Infinitive.	
	Preterperfect.		
	Preterpluperf.		
	First Supine.	{	
	Latter Supine.		
	Participle of the Future in <i>rus</i>	{ of the Indicative.	Active voice.
	Future tense of the Infinitive.		
	Preterperfect.	{ of the Potential.	Passive voice.
	Preterpluperf.		
	Preterperfect.		
	Preterpluperf.		
	Future tense	{ of the Infinitive.	
	Preterperfect.		
	Preterpluperf.		
From the latter Supine is formed the	Participle of the preter tense.	{	
	Future of the Infinitive, viz. um, iri.		

Q. How are all tenses formed from the present and preterperfect tenses of the Indicative mood active, and from the latter Supine?

A. Tenses that are formed of the present tense of the Indicative Mood active voice, change the *o* of their present tense into the proper Terminations of the severall tenses formed of it, ex. gr. *o* into *am, abo, ebo, or, abar, ebar, abor, ebor, &c.*

Q. What is the verse that tells you what tenses are formed of others?

A. *ram, rim, ssem, ro, sse*; formabit cætera præsens.

Q. What is the meaning of that verse?

A. All tenses that end in *ram, rim, ssem, ro, and sse*, are formed of the Preterperfect tense of the Indicative mood, and all the rest of the Present tense of the same Mood.

From the Preterperfect tense of Indic. mood act. is formed

Preterperf. Indicar.

Preterfect.

Future

} Potential

by changing

i

into

e

and adding

*ram.
rim.
ro.*

as *amavi, amaveram, amaverim, amavero.*

Preterpluperfect. Potential

Preterperfect.

Preterpluperf.

} Infinitive

by keeping

i

and adding

*ssem, amavi-ssem.
sse, amavi-ssc.*

From the latter
Supine is formed the

{ Participle of the Future in *rus*,
Future tense of the Infin. act.
Preterperfect. } of the Indic.
Preterpluperf. } passive
Preterperfect. } of the Potent.
Preterpluperf. } tial passive
Future tense }
Preterperfect. } of the Infinit.
Preterpluperf. } passive
Participle of the preter tense
{ Future of the Infin. pass. *um iri.*

by putting to
*rus.
ram esse
s, sum vel fui.
s, eram vel fueram.
s, sim vel fuerim.
s, ssem vel fuisssem,
s, ero vel fuero.
m, esse vel fuisset.
s.
m, iri.*

Note, that the same Terminations serve for the Optative, Potential, and Subjunctive; though these Moods be differenced by the English signs, and by Conjunctions.

Give

Give me the Tenses active, that are formed of the present tense of the Indicative Mood active.

Indicative Mood Active.					
Present tense	o	Amo	Doceo	Lego	Audio
Preterimp.	bam	Amabam	Docebam	Legebam	Audiebam
Future tense	{ bo am	Amabo	Docebo	Legam	Audiam

Imperative Mood Active.					
Pres. tens.	1. { 2 ato	Ama Amato			
Second Person singular	2. { e eto		Doce Doceto		
	3. { e ito			Leg Legito	
	4. { i ito				Audi Audito

Potential Mood Active.					
Present tense	{ em am	Amem	Doceam	Legam	Audiam
Preterimp.	rem	Amarem	Doceam Docerem	Legerem	Audirem

Infinitive Mood Active.					
Present & Preterim- perfect tense	{ 1. are 2. ere 3. ere 4. ire	Amare	Docere	Legere	Audire
Gerunds	{ di do dum	Amandi Amando Amandum	Docendi Docendo Docendum	Legendi Legendo Legendum	Audiendi Audiendo Audiendum
Particlp. pres.	{ ans ens	Amans	Docens	Legens	Audiens

Give me the tenses Passive that are formed of the present tense of the Indicative Mood.

Indicative Mood Passive.

Present tense	or	Amor	Doceor	Legor	Audiar
Preterimperf.	bar	Amabar	Docebar	Legebar	Audiebar
Future tense	{ bor ar	Amabor	Docebor	Legar	Audiar

Imperative Mood Passive.

Pres. tens. Second Person singular	1. { are	Amare			
	2. { ator	Amator	Docere		
	3. { etor		Docetor	Legere	
	4. { ere itor ire itor			Legitor	Audire Auditor

Potential Mood Passive.

Present tense	{ er ar	Amer	Docear	Legar	Audiar
Preterimp.	{ rer	Amarer	Docecer	Legerer	Audirer

Infinitive Mood Passive.

Present & Preterim- perfect tense	{ 1. ari 2. eri 3. i 4. iri	Amari	Doceri	Legi	Audiri
Participle of the Fut. in dus.	{ 1. andus 2. endus 3. iendus 4. iendus	Amandus	Docendus	Legendus Cupiendus	Audiendus
Future tense	-ndum esse	Amandum esse	Docendum esse	Legendum esse	Audiendum esse

Give

Give me the Tenses Active that are formed of the Preterperfect tense of the Indicative Mood Active?

Indicative Mood Active.

Preterperf.	i	Amavi	Docui	Legi	Audivi
Preterplup.	eram	Amaveram	Docueram	Legeram	Audiveram

Subjunctive Mood Active.

Preterperf.	erim	Amaverim	Docuerim	Legerim	Audiverim
Preterplup.	issem	Amavissem	Docuisssem	Legissem	Audivissem
Fut. tense.	ero	Amavero	Docuero	Legero	Audivero

Infinitive Mood Active.

Preterperf. & First & Latter	isse	Amavisse	Docuisse	Legisse	Audivisse
Preterplup.	um	Amatum	Docum	Legum	Auditum
Supine	u	Amatu	Docu	Legu	Auditu *
Particip. of Fut. in pres	urus	Amaturus	Docurus	Legurus	Auditurus
Future tense	urum esse	Amaturum esse	Docurum esse	Legurum esse	Auditurum esse

In the same manner that the tenses are formed of the preterperfect Active, are, *Odi*, *Capi*, *Novi* and *Memini*, declined.

Memini, *memineram*, *meminerim*, *meminissim*, *meminero*, *meminisse*; also in the Imperative Mood it hath, *memento*, *ne mentote*.

Give

Give me the tenses Passive that are formed of the Latter Supine.

Indicative Mood Passive.

us	sum <i>vel</i>	Amatus sum	Doctus sum	Lectus sum	Auditus sum
	fui	<i>vel</i> fui	<i>vel</i> fui	<i>vel</i> fui	<i>vel</i> fui
	eram <i>vel</i>	Amatus eram	Doctus eram	Lectus eram	Auditus eram
	fueram	<i>vel</i> fueram	<i>vel</i> fueram	<i>vel</i> fueram	<i>vel</i> fueram

Subjunctive Mood Passive.

us	sim	Amatus sim	Doctus sim,	Lectus sim,	Auditus sim,
	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>
us	fuero	fuero	fuero	fuero	fuero
	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>
us	esset	Amatus	Doctus esset	Lectus esset	Auditus esset
	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>
us	fuissem	fuissem	fuissem	fuissem	fuissem
	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>
us	ero	Amatus ero	Doctus ero,	Lectus ero,	Auditus ero
	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>
us	fuero	fuero	fuero	fuero	fuero
	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>

Infinitive Mood Passive.

um	esse	Amatum esse	Doctum esse	Lectum esse	Auditum esse
	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>
um	fuisse	fuisse	fuisse	fuisse	fuisse
	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>
um	Partic. Tui	Amatus	Doctus	Lectus	Auditus
	Preter. Sus				
um	perf. Xus	Amatum	Doctum	Lectum	Auditum
	Fut. um				
um	iri	iri	iri	iri	iri
	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>vel</i>

So is *Odi* declined in the first person singular, only through those tenses that are formed of the Preterperfect tense Indicative Mood,

Odi, oderam, oderim, odissem, otero, odisse.



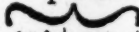
Capi, caperam, caperim, capissem, capero, capisse.

Novi, noveram, noverim, novissem, novero, novisse;

Nosti for *novisti*, *noram* for *noveram*, by Syncope

Active

Active voice

Tenses	Signes of the Tenses in English	Terminations in Latine of the Indic. Mood 1. pers. sing.	Terminations in Latine of the Potential Mood 1. pers. sing.
Present tense	<i>Doc</i> <i>Doest</i> <i>Doib</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} s \\ st \\ th \end{array} \right.$	o	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} em \\ am \end{array} \right.$
Preterimperfect tense	<i>Did</i> <i>Didst</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} ed \\ t. \end{array} \right.$	bam	rem
Preterperfect tense	<i>Have</i> <i>Hast</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} d. \\ t. \\ n. \end{array} \right.$ <i>Hatb</i>	i	erim
Preterpluperf. tense	<i>Had</i> $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} d. \\ t. \\ n. \end{array} \right.$ <i>Hadst</i>	eram	issem
Future tense	<i>Shall or will : and hereafter.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} bo \\ am \end{array} \right.$	ero
The Signes of the Moods	Indicative. 	Imperative.  <i>Let</i> <i>Biddeth or commandeth</i>	Optative.  An Adverb of wishing. <i>would God, I pray God, God grant, oh that, &c.</i> Passive

Passive Voice,

Signs of the tenses in English.	Terminations in Latine of the Indicative Mood, 1 pers. sing.	Terminations in La- tine of the Potenti- al Mood, 1 person singular.
---------------------------------------	---	---

*am, art,
is, are, be
{ ed }
t
n.*

or

{ er
ar

*was, wast,
were.
d, t, n.*

bar

rer

*Have been
d, t, n.*

us { Sum, vel
fui.

us { Sim, vel
fuerim.

*Had been
d, t, n.*

us { eram, vel
fueram

us { essem, vel
fuissem.

*Shall, or Will
be; and here-
after. d, t, n.*

{ bor
ar

us { ero, vel
fuero.

Potential.

Subjunctive.

Infinitive.

*May, can,
might, would,
should, could,
ought.*

*If, when, because
some conjunction,
&c.*

*To,
and it is most commonly
the latter of two Verbs.*

D

Imper-

Impersonals are declined in the third person singular onely.

Conjug.	Conjug.	Conjug.	Conjug.	An Example of the first Conjugation.
1. at	2. et	3. it	4. it	Delectat
abat	ebat	{ ebat	iebat	Delectabat
avit	uit	{ iebat	iviat	Delectavit
averat	uerat	{ it	iverat	Delectaverat
abit	ebit	{ erat		Delectabit
{ et	{ eat	{ et	iet	{ Delectet
{ ato	{ eto	{ iet	iato	{ Delectato
et	eat	{ at	iat	Delectet
aret	eret	{ ito	iret	Delectaret
averit	uerit	{ at	iverit	Delectaverit
avisset	uisset	{ eret	ivisset	Delectavisset
averit	uerit	{ erit	iverit	Delectaverit
are	ere	{ iverit	ire.	Delectare
		{ ere.		

Passives put *ut, ro, at, et, is, as, aly, &c.*

Their Gerunds, Supines and Participles are like Personals when they are not wanting, i. e. if they have any.

	Active voice.	Passive voice.
Indicat.	{ Preterperfect tense	{ it
	{ Preterpluperfect.	{ erat
	{ Preterperfect tense	{ erit
Potential.	{ Preterpluperfect.	{ esset vel fuisset
	{ Future tense	{ erit, vel fuerit.

Fero	tuli	latum
Af	At	Al
Au	Abs	Ab
Con	Con	Col
Es	Ex	E
In	In	Il
Suf	Sus	Sub
Of	Ob	Ob

This change of Letters is made for better sound sake : for it sounds better to say *Affero*, than *Adfero*; *Attuli*, than *Adtuli*, &c.

Figurative

Figurative Terminations.

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{âsti} \\ \text{fti} \\ \text{xti} \\ \text{âram} \\ \text{ârim} \\ \text{âssem} \\ \text{âsse} \\ \text{esse} \\ \text{isse} \end{array} \right\} \text{for} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{avisti} \\ \text{visti} \\ \text{xisti} \\ \text{âveram} \\ \text{averim} \\ \text{avissem} \\ \text{avisse} \\ \text{evisse} \\ \text{ivisse} \end{array} \right\} \text{Per Syncope.}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{ii} \\ \text{iêran} \\ \text{iêrim} \\ \text{iissem} \\ \text{iêrô} \end{array} \right\} \text{for} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ivi} \\ \text{iveram} \\ \text{iverim} \\ \text{ivissem} \\ \text{ivero.} \end{array} \right\} \text{Per Syncope.}$
	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{x'cin'} \\ \text{stin'} \\ \text{in'} \\ \text{ên'} \end{array} \right\} \text{for} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{xistine} \\ \text{vistine} \\ \text{is-ne} \\ \text{es-ne} \end{array} \right\} \text{Per Syncope \& Apocopen.}$

In the Infinitive Mood Passive, *ier* for *i* Paragogicé.

In Nouns, and } { on' } for } o ne } Per Apocopen.
Pronouns } { en' } { e-ne }

Six Prepositions are never used but in Composition, viz, *Am, Di, dis, Re, Se, Con*. They are joyned to the beginning of words.

The putting in, casting away, or changing a Consonant in a Preposition when compounded, is made, *Euphonie gratiâ*; thus:

In } before *b, p*, change *n* into *m*, as } *in* & *bibo*, is, *imbibo*.
Con } *con* & *pono*, is, *compono*.

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Ad} \\ \text{Ob} \\ \text{Sub} \\ \text{In} \\ \text{Con} \\ \text{Per} \\ \text{Inter} \\ \text{Ex} \end{array} \right\} \text{before} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} c, f, g, l, n, p, r, s, t. \\ c, f, g, p. \\ c, f, g, m, p. \\ l, m, r. \\ l, \text{ sometimes.} \\ f. \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Ad} \\ \text{Ob} \\ \text{Trans} \\ \text{Dis} \end{array} \right\} \text{sometimes before} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{lose a letter; as,} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Aperio} \\ \text{Om ito} \\ \text{Tra jicio} \\ \text{Divello} \end{array} \right\} \text{looseth} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} d. \\ b. \\ ns. \\ s. \end{array} \right\}$
--	---	--

change their last letter into the Consonant of the word following, as,

Accurro
Opprimo
Suggero
Illudo
Corrigo
Pelluceo
Intelligo
Effero.

$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Ad} \\ \text{Ob} \\ \text{Trans} \\ \text{Dis} \end{array} \right\} \text{sometimes before} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{lose a letter; as,} \end{array} \right\}$

Con, { always before a vowel and } *Côdemo*, { of *con* & } *emo*.
h, looseth a letter, as, } *Cohibeo* { *habeo*.

Abs before *f* is made *ax*; as, *aufero*, not *absfero*.

Some before a vowel take, *r, d*, as, *dirimo*, *prodigo*, *redeo*.

Q. What cases in every Declension end alike?

A. In the

1. Declension.	2. Declension.	3. Declension.
{ Nom. } singul. a { Voc. } { Ablat. } { Gen. } singul. { Dat. } { Nom. } plur. { Voc. } Accus. singul. am Genit. plur. arum { Dat. } plur. is { Abl. } plur. abus Accus. plur. as.	Nom. sing. r, us, um. { Gen. singul. } i { Nom. } plur. { Voc. } { Dat. } singul. o { Ablat. } Accus. sing. um Voc. sing. r, e, i, um Genit. plur. orum { Dat. } plur. is { Abl. } Accus. plur. os.	{ Nom. } sing. { a, c, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, x. { Voc. } Genit. singul. is Dat. singul. i Accus. singular. { em { im. Ablat. singul. { e { i. { Nom. } plur. es. { Accus. } { Voc. } Genit. plural. { um { ium { Dat. } plur. ibus. { Ablat. }

4. Declension.	5. Declension.	Terminations of all Declensions together.
{ Nom. } singul. { Gen. } { Voc. } { Nom. } plur. { Accus. } { Voc. } Dat. singul. ui Accus. singul. um Ablat. sing. u Genit. plur. uum { Dat. } plur. ibus. { Ablat. } ubus.	{ Nom. } sing. { Voc. } { Nom. } plur. { Accus. } { Voc. } { Genit. } { Dat. } sing. ei Accus. sing. em. Ablat. sing. e Genit. plur. crum { Dat. } plur. ebus.	a, æ, am, arum, is, abus, as. r, us, um, i, o, e, orum, os. e, l, n, s, t, x, em, im, es, ium, ibus. ui, a, uum, ubus. ei, crum, ebus. <i>These are the Endings of all Regular Nouns whatever they be.</i>

Observe that the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural of Nouns of the Neuter Gender end in *a*: whether they be of the second, third, or fourth Declension; for the first and fifth have no Neuters.

Also the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative singular of Neuters end alike; and in the fourth Declension Neuters end alike in all cases singular, that is, in *u*.

Participles Active.

Q. How may a Participle of the Present tense be known?

A. In English by its ending in *-ing*; in Latine in $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ans} \\ \text{ens} \end{array} \right.$.

Q. Whence is a Participle of the Present tense formed?

A. Of the Preterimperfect Indicative by changing the last syllable, *bam, bar, ram*, into *us*: as *Amabam, Amans*; *Auxiliabar, Auxilians, Poteram Potens*.

Q. How is a Participle of the Future in *rus* known?

A. In English by these signs, *to, about to, ready to, desirous to*: in Latine by its ending in *rus*; as *Doctu, Docturus, Lectu, Lecturus, Auditu, Auditurus*.

Q. Whence is it formed?

A. Of the Latter Supine by adding, *rus*.

Participles Passive.

Q. How do you know a Participle of the Preter tense?

A. In English by its ending in *d, t, n*; in Latine in *rus, sus, xus*: &c.

Q. Whence is a Participle of the Preter tense formed?

A. Of the Latter Supine, by putting to *s*; as *Lectu, lectus*; *Visu, visus, nexu, nexus*.

Q. How may any one know when a Participle is of the Future in *Dus*?

A. In English by its signe *to be*; in Latine by its ending in *ndus*:

Q. Whence is a Participle of the Future in *dus* formed?

A. Of the Genitive case of the Participle of the Present tense, by changing *tis* into *dus*; as *Aman- $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tis} \\ \text{dus} \end{array} \right.$, Docen- $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tis} \\ \text{dus} \end{array} \right.$, Legen- $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tis} \\ \text{dus} \end{array} \right.$.*

Participles of the Present tense are declined like *Felix*: and the rest like *bonus*.

Active.

Participle Present tense $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ans} \\ \text{ens} \end{array} \right\} \text{ing.}$

Futur. in _____ urus: *to*.

Passive.

Partic. Preter. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tus} \\ \text{sus} \\ \text{xus} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} d. \\ t. \\ n. \end{array} \right.$

Futur. in _____ ndus, *to be*.

Question.

VV *What is the first book that you learn, toward the attaining of the Latine Tongue?*

A. The Accidence.

Q. What book is the Accidence?

A. A book that teacheth us the first Principles of the Latine tongue.

Q. Why is it called the Accidence?

A. Because it teacheth first and chiefly the Accidents, that is, the things belonging to the parts of Speech.

Q. Into how many parts is the whole Latine tongue divided?

A. Into eight, viz. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, &c.

Q. Is not every word a part of Speech?

A. Yes.

Q. Seeing there are thousands of words, and every word is a part of Speech, why do you say, there are but eight?

A. Because all words, though they are parts of Speech, yet they are not distinct parts from each other: but are all to be reduced to eight, and called by one of these names, Noun, Pronoun, &c.

Q. What difference is there between the first four, and the last four parts?

A. The first four are declined, and the last four are undeclined.

Q. What is it to be declined?

A. It is to be varied or changed into divers Terminations, as Magister, magistri, magistro, magistrum, &c. Amo, amas, amavi.

Q. What is it to be undeclined?

A. It is not to be varied or changed into divers Terminations, but to remain always the same, as hodie, cras, apud, vel, &c.

Q. What is a Termination?

A. A Termination is the ending of a word in the last letter, or syllable, sometimes in the two last syllables, and sometimes more.

Q. How many parts of Speech are declined with case, and how many without case?

A. Three are declined with case, and one without case.

Q. Which three are declined with case?

A. Noun, Pronoun, Participle.

Q. Which is the part of Speech that is declined without case?

A. A verb.

Of a Noun.

Q. W *hat is a noun Substantive?*

A. A word that standeth by it self; that is, it is a word that may be understood of it self alone without the help of another word.

Q. How know you when a word may be understood of it self?

A. When I may put a or the before it, and cannot fitly put the word thing after it: as a book, the School; I cannot fitly say, a book thing, the School thing.

Q. What

Q. What is a Noun Adjective?

A. A Noun Adjective is a word that will have thing after it, or some other word to determine its meaning, as a good.

Q. How do you know that good is a Noun Adjective?

A. Because I can put thing after it very fitly; I can say a good thing.

Q. Why do you say an Adjective must have some other word to determine its meaning?

A. Because no man knows what I mean by good unless I say some other word to limit its meaning to something; as a good boy; &c.

Q. What are the usual marks or notes of a Substantive in English?

A. A or the, when thing cannot with sense be put after the word.

Q. How do you know a Noun Substantive in Latine?

A. I minde how many Articles it hath before it; if it hath one or two, then it's a substantive, but if it hath more than two, then it is not.

Q. What is the signe of a Noun Adjective in English?

A. The word thing, if it may be added without spoiling the sense: as I know kinde is a Noun Adjective; because I can put thing to it without spoiling the sense; and say a kinde thing, a kinde Master,

Q. How do you know an Adjective in Latine?

A. I observe, how many terminations the word hath of which I doubt, or any one asketh me; if it hath three, then I conclude that it is a Noun Adjective; or if it hath one or two terminations; yet if it hath three Articles, then it is an Adjective also; as, Bonus, bona, bonum, three terminations; Felix one termination and three Articles; Tristis, triste, two terminations and three Articles.

Q. How are the parts of Speech differenced that are declined?

A. A Noun and a Verb are differenced by their signification.

Q. What is the difference between a Noun and a Verb, as to their significations.

A. A Noun signifies the name of a thing: and a Verb signifies the manner of doing, suffering, or being of a thing.

Q. How are a Noun, Pronoun and Participle differenced from a Verb, as to their manner of declining?

A. Thus, a Noun, Pronoun, and Participle are declined with cases: and a Verb is declined with Mood and Tense.

Q. How are the Parts of Speech differenced else?

A. By their Accidents; or things belonging to them.

Q. How many things are there belonging to a Noun Substantive?

A. Five. Number, Case, Gender, Declension, and Special Rule.

Q. What is a Number?

A. Number is an Accident, whereby I discern whether the Speech be of one or more.

Q. There being two Numbers, the Singular and the Plural: how do you know the singular Number?

A. The singular number speaketh but of one: as Lapis, a stone, which is all one as if I had said, one stone.

Q. What are the marks of the plural number in English?

A. The plural number adds *s*, to the singular; as *hand* in the plural is *hands*, with *s* added to the singular *hand*: sometimes it adds *n*, as, *oxen*, *children*; sometimes it changeth the vowel, as *man*, in the Plural is *men*, *foot*, *feet*. It always speaks of more then one, as *hands* is more then one *hand*, *feet*, then one *foot*.

Q. What is a Case?

A. The special ending of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle in their declinings.

Q. How be the six Cases known one from another?

A. The Nominative and Accusative are known by their places: (*viz.* the Nom. before, and the Accus. after the Verb) and the rest by their signs: *viz.* Genitive of *or*'s. Dative *to*, *for*. Voc. *o*, *oh*, Ablative *from*, *in*, *with*, *through*, *for*, (*by* and *than*, after Comparative.)

Q. What is a Gender?

A. The difference of a Noun according to the sex.

Q. What mean you by the difference of a Noun according to the sex?

A. It is the difference whereby a word is noted to signifie the male or female, he or she, or neither of them.

Q. What doth the Masculine properly belong to?

A. To Masculines, that is, to males, or hees; and to such words as are used under the names of hees.

Q. How do you know when a word is of the Masculine Gender?

A. When it is declined with this Article *hic*: as Nom. *hic vir*.

Q. How many Articles are there? *Answ.* Three.

Q. Which be they? *Answ.* *Hic, hec, hoc*.

Q. What is the use of Articles?

A. They are Marks and notes of Genders of Nouns, Pronouns and Participles.

Q. Why are the Articles set before the Genders in the Accidence?

A. Because, as they are signs, they ought to be set before the things that they are signs of.

Q. What doth the Feminine Gender belong to?

A. To Feminines, that is, to Females or shees; or to things going under the name of shees.

Q. What doth the Neuter belong to?

A. It belongeth to words which signifie neither he nor she.

Q. What belongs the Common of two unto?

A. To words signifying both male and female, both he and she.

Q. What belongeth the Common of three unto?

A. Unto Noun Adjectives, Pronouns Adjectives and Participles.

Q. What doth the doubtful Gender belong unto?

A. To such living creatures, in which the kinde is dubious, or unknown whether they be he or she: as a *snail*, a *snake*, and to some others: also to lifeless things, as a *day*, a *chanel*, and the like.

Q. What doth the Epicene Gender belong to?

A. It doth not properly belong to any one sex, but to such words as contain both sexes under their signification, as *Passer* a Sparrow, both he & she the Cock and the Hen.

Q. What?

Q. What is the Article of the Epicene Gender?

A. It hath no proper Article: but some words are declined with hic, and some with hæc.

Q. How will you distinguish the Masculine hic from the Epicene hic, and the Feminine hæc, from the Epicene hæc?

A. That word that hath hic before it, and is onely male, is the Masculine gender: but if it be both male and female, then it is the Epicene Gender: and so hæc before a female, is feminine, but hæc before a word that contains under it both sexes, is Epicene.

Q. How many simple Genders are there?

A. Three: Masculine, Feminine, Neuter.

Q. What are the other four Genders?

A. Compounded and made out of these three, viz. Masc. Fem. Neut.

Q. What is a Declension?

A. The ordering of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, with number, case and gender.

Q. How many Declensions are there?

A. Of what do you mean, Nouns or Pronouns?

Q. How many Declensions of Nouns are there?

A. Five. Q. How are the Declensions known asunder?

A. By the Terminations of their Cases.

Q. How do you know of what Declension any word (viz. Noun, Pronoun, or Participle,) is?

A. By the ending of the Genitive case singular.

Q. How doth the Genitive singular end in all Declensions of Nouns?

A. The Genitive singular of the

1.	1	2.	1	3.	1	4.	1	5.
a.	1	i.	1	is.	1	us, u.	1	ei.



Q. How do you know the Genders of Adjectives, or what Gender any termination of an Adjective is of.

A. I minde how many terminations there are, if the Adjective hath three terminations, the first word is Masculine, the second is Feminine, the third is Neuter: as Bonus is the Masculine, because it is the first word, Bona Feminine, because it is the second, and Bonum is the Neuter, because it is the third word.

Q. What if these words that have three terminations in the Nominative, have but one in some other case; as Dat. Bonis what Gender is that word of?

A. That word is of all three Genders, viz. Mascut. Femin. Neut.

Q. When an Adjective of three Articles hath but one Termination, as Nom. Felix, of what Gender is that?

A. That is likewise, Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

Q. But what if an Adjective of three Articles hath two terminations, what Gender are these two words of?

A. The first is Masculine and Feminine, as Tristis; and the second is Neuter, as Triste.

Q. How many things belong to a Noun Adjective?

A. Five.

A. Five. Number, Case, Gender, Declension and Comparison.

Q. What is Comparison?

A. The altering the signification of a word into more or less by degrees.

Q. What is it for Adjectives to have their signification increased, or diminished.

A. To be made more or less by degrees; as *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*: so back again, *hardest*, *harder*, *hard*.

Q. What mean you by a degree of Comparison?

A. Every word that alters the signification by more or less, is a degree.

Q. What is the signe of the Positive degree?

A. There is no signe of the Positive degree, but onely it may be known by its absolute signification without respect to any other.

Q. What is the signe of the Comparative degree?

A. More before the word compared, as *more hard*, or *er* at the end of it; as *harder*.

Q. What are the signs of the Superlative degree?

A. *Most* or *very* before the word compared; as *most hard* or *very hard*; or *-est* added to the end of the Positive, or word to be compared, as *hard-est*.

Q. How do you know the degrees in Latine?

A. I must consider whether it be Comparative or Superl. and if by its termination I perceive it is neither of them, then I know it is the Positive.

Q. But what endings hath the Positive?

A. The same that Adjectives of one, of two and of three terminations have; that is, *us*, *er*, *ur*, *x*, *r*, & *s*, with a consonant before it.

Q. How do you know the Comparative degree in Latine?

A. By the endings.

Q. What endings hath the Comparative degree?

A. *ior* for the Masculine and Feminine, and *ius* for the Neuter.

Q. How do you know when a word is of the Superlative in Latine?

A. By the endings.

Q. What are the endings of the Superlative degree?

A. *issimus*, *errimus*, *illimus*, and *imus*.

Q. Are the terminations of the Comparative and Superlative degree the onely signs to know the degrees by in Latine.

A. No, for sometimes I must know them by *magis* & *maximè*.

Q. How do you know the Comparative if it ends not in *ior*?

A. By seeing *magis* before a word that ends in *ius*, *eus*, *uus*, or that hath any vowel before *us*.

Q. Some Positives ending in *ius*, and some Comparatives ending in *ius* also; how will you distinguish them?

A. The Positive that ends in *ius*, cannot be made *ior*, (as *pius* is not made *pior*) but the Comparative *ius* may be made *ior*, as *doctius doctior*; or else it is known by having *magis* before it, as *pius*, in the comparative, hath *magis* before it, and is *magis pius*.

Q. How must you know the Superlative, if it ends neither in *issimus*, *errimus*, *illimus*, nor *imus*?

A. By seeing *maximè* before a word that ends in *ius*, *eus*, *uus*, or that hath a vowel before *us*.

Of

Of a Pronoun.

Q. What are all Pronouns?

A. Three of them are Substantives, viz. *Ego, tu, sui*, and the rest are Adjectives, except *Qui*, which is chiefly a Relative: so that a Pronoun is either Substantive, Adjective, or Relative.

Q. How many Declensions of Pronouns are there?

A. Four.

Q. How will you know of what Declension any Pronoun is?

A. By the ending of the Genitive case singular, as in Nouns.

Q. How doth the Gen. singular of the Declensions of Pronouns end?

A. The	1 st .	I	2 ^d .	I	3 ^d .	I	4 th .
in	i.	ius, or jus.	i	e, i.	i	atis.	

Q. How many things belong to a Pronoun?

A. Five. Number, Case, Gender, Declension and Person.

Q. What belong to a Pronoun, that do not belong to a Noun?

A. Three Persons.

Q. What things belong to a Noun, that do not belong to a Pronoun?

A. Special Rule if the Noun be Substantive, and Comparison if Adjective.

Q. What mean you by a Person?

A. Any person or thing, which speaketh of it self, is spoken to, or is spoken of.

Q. How many words are of the first Person?

A. *Ego, I: Nos, We.*

Q. How many words are of the second Person?

A. *Tu, Thou; Vos, ye*, and every Vocative case.

Q. What words are of the third Person?

A. All Nouns, Pronouns, and Participles; except *Ego, Nos, Tu, Vos.*

Q. Are all Pronouns, Except *Ego, Nos, Tu, Vos*, of the Third Person?

A. No, for *Ipse, Idem & Qui*, are sometimes of the first and second, when joyned with those Persons expressed or understood.

Of a Verb.

Q. How do all Verbs end in their first words?

A. In *o, m, or*. A Verb Active and Neuter end in *o*, and sometimes a Verb Neuter ends in *m*; a Verb Passive, Deponent and Commune end in *or*.

Q. A Verb Active, and a Verb Neuter ending both in *o*, how shall I know them asunder?

A. You may know a Verb Active because that hath *do* before it in English, and will have an Accusative after it answering to the question whom or what; when as a Verb Neuter hath commonly *am* before it in English, and will never have an Accusative case after it.

Q. How

Q. How else can you know a Verb Active from a Verb Neuter? 7

A. A Verb Active can take *r*, and be made a Passive; as *scribo*, *scribor*, but a Verb Neuter cannot take *r*, as *curro*, *no curror*.

Q. How may it be known when a Verb that ends in *or* is Passive, when it is a Deponent, and when it is a Commune; seeing Passive, Deponent and Commune end all in *or*?

A. When a Verb ends in *or*, and hath *am* before it in English, then it is a Passive. When it ends in *or*, and hath *do* before it in English, then it is a Deponent. When a Verb ends in *or*, and may have both *do* and *am* before it in English then it is commune. Verbs deponent have Gerunds and Supines, but Passives have neither.

Q. Can any Verbs change the Termination of their first words?

A. Yes, Active and Passive can, viz. *o* into *or*; and *or* into *o*: but a Verb Deponent and Commune cannot cast away *r*; as *loquor* cannot be made *loquo*; nor *osculor*, *osculo*.

Q. But some Verbs are Transitive, others Intransitive; how do you know which are Transitives?

A. If I can truly ask the question whom or what made by the Verb, then it is Transitive: as Love is a Verb Transitive, because I can say whom do I love; or what do I love.

Q. How may it be known which are Intransitives?

A. Such Verbs as have an absolute perfect sense in their own signification without asking any question, are Intransitives; as *curro*, I run; it cannot be said pertinently whom, or what do I run?

Q. Of all the five kinds of Verbs Personals, which are Transitives?

A. Verbs Active, Deponent, and Commune, signifying Actively.

Q. Which are Intransitives of the five kinds of Personals?

A. Verbs passives (and Neuters for the most part) and also Communes signifying passively.

Q. What things belong to a Noun that do not belong to a Verb?

A. These five. Gender, case, Declensions, Special Rule and Comparison.

Q. How many things belong to a Verb?

A. Six. Kinde, Mood, Tense, Number, Person and Conjugation.

Q. You say a Verb is declined with Mood and Tense, what is a Mood?

A. The manner of speech wherein the signification of a Verb is uttered, as in declaring, commanding, wishing, or the like.

Q. What signe hath the Indicative Mood?

A. It hath no signe.

Q. How will you know then when a Verb is of the Indicative Mood?

A. When it hath no signe of any other Mood, then it is the Indicative. That is, a Verb is of the Indicative Mood, when it neither biddeth nor commandeth, nor wisheth, neither hath before it *Let*, *would God*, *I pray God*, *God grant*, *ob that*, nor hath an Adverb of wishing, nor a Conjunction before it, nor, *may*, *can*, *might*, *would*, *could*, *should*, *ought*, nor *to*, then it is the Indicative.

Q. What are the signs of the Moods?

A. Indicative, Imperative, *Let*. Optative, *would God*, *I pray*

pray God, &c. Potential, may, can, might, &c. Subjunctive, *If, when, because, &c.* Infinitive, *to.*

Q. How do the *Optative, Potential and Subjunctive Moods* differ?

A. They are the same in Termination in Latin; but they differ in signification and sign of the Mood in English.

Q. Why do *Gerunds and Supines* belong to the *Infinitive Mood*?

A. Because their signification is infinite; like to the signification of the *Infinitive Mood*: not making any difference of Number or Person.

Q. What is a *Tense*?

A. The difference of a Verb according to the times past, present, and to come.

Q. By this answer you seem to make but three Tenses or Times, whereas our Grammar makes five: are there then but three?

A. Properly there are but three, but improperly five, because the Time past may be divided into three, that is the *Preterimperfect Tense*, not perfectly past; the *Preterperfect tense*, perfectly past, and the *Preterpluperfect tense* more then perfectly past: these three added to the *Present Tense* and *Future tense*, or time to come; make five Tenses or Times.

Q. What are the signs of the five Tenses *Active voice*?

A. Do, doest, doth, did, didst, have, hast, hath, &c.

Q. What are the signs of the five Tenses *Passive*?

A. Am, art, is, are, be, was, wast, were, have been, had been, &c.

Q. Give me the first Person of the Tenses formed of the *Present Tense*?

A. Amo, amabam, amabo; Imperative Mood second Person. Ama amato: Potential Mood, Amem, amarem, Infinit. Amare; Gerunds, amandi, amando, amandum, Particip. Amans.

Q. Give me tenses that are formed of the *Preterperfect tense*?

A. Amavi, amaveram, Potential Mood, Amaverim, amavissem, amavero: Infinit. Amavisse, amatum, amatu, amaturus, amaturum esse.

Q. Rehearse the first Persons together as they are in the Book.

A. Amo, amabam, amavi, amaveram, amabo: Imperat. Mood wants the first Person sing. second Person, ama, amato: Potential, amem, amarem, amaverim, &c.

Q. Rehearse the first Persons *Actively & Passively* together as they stand.

A. Amo, amor, Amabam, amabar, amavi, amatus sum vel fui, amaveram, amatum eram vel fueram, &c.

Q. Give the Terminations of the first Persons *Active*?

A. O, bam, i, eram, bo, am: em, am; rem, rim, issem, ero.

Q. Give the Terminations of the *Active and Passive* together.

A. O, or; bam, bar; i, us sum vel fui; eram, us eram vel fueram; bo, bor, am, ar; em, er, am, ar; rem, rer; erim, us sim vel fuerim; issem, us essem vel fuisset; ero, us ero vel fuero. Infinit. re, ri, i; isse, um esse vel fuisse; urum esse, um iri, vel -ndum esse.

Q. How do the Persons commonly end in the *Active voice*?

A. O, am, em, im, i; as, es, is, it; at, et, it; mus, tis, nt.

Q. How do the Persons commonly end in the *Passive voice*.

A. Or, ar, er; ris, re, es, it; as; tur, us: -t; mur; mini; ntur.

Q. *orbat*

Q. What is it to be perfect in a Verb?

A. To be able to give either the English to the Latin, or Latin to the English of any Verb in each Mood Tense and Person: also to tell what Mood Tense Number and Person any Verb is, by the Termination.

Q. Which is the speediest way to get and keep the Verbs?

A. The often repetition of these Terminations in Latine, and of the English signs of the Moods, Tenses, and Persons: and also much examination of the Active and Passive together: as asking: I love *Amo*; I am loved, *amor*; he loveth, *amat*; he is loved, *amatur*; they love, *amant*; they are loved, *amantur*. &c.

Q. What is a Person in a Verb?

A. Every several word in every Mood and Tense, except the Infinitive, which hath no person.

Q. Why are they called Persons?

A. Because one of the three Persons of the Pronouns is understood in every one of them. as *Amo*, I love, is as much, as *Ego amo*, I love; *amas*, thou lovest is as much as, *tu amas*, &c.

Q. What is a Conjugation?

A. The ordering of a Verb with its Moods, Tenses, Numbers & Persons.

Q. How do you know what Conjugation any Verb is of?

A. By the vowel that comes before *re* and *ris*.

*Q. Where are these words to be found that end in *re* and *ris*?*

A. *Re*, in the Infinitive Mood Active Present tense, which is the fourth word in declining a Verb Active: as *amo*, *amas*, *amavi*, *amare*: & *ris*, in the second Person singular of the Indicative Mood Passive, which is the second word in declining a Verb Passive; as *amor*, *amaris*, &c.

*Q. Give me the first person singular of *Amo*, through all Moods and Tenses without the English.*

A. *Amo*, *amabam*, *amavi*, *amaveram*, *amabo*; Imperative Mood wants the first person singular, *ama*, *amato*, Potential, *amem*, &c.

Q. Give me the first Person singular with the English last.

A. *Amo*, I love or do love, *amabam*, I loved or did love, &c.

Q. Give me the first person singular through all Moods and Tenses with the English first.

A. I love or do love, *Amo*, I loved or did love, *Amabam*, &c.

Q. Give me the first person singular of the Passive voice through all Moods and Tenses without the English.

A. *Amor*, *amabar*, *amatus sum vel fui*, *amatus eram*, &c.

Q. Give me the first person singular Passive, with the English last.

A. *Amor*; I am loved, *Amabar* I was loved, &c.

Q. Give me the first person singular Passive with the English first.

A. I am loved, *Amor*. I was loved, *amabar* &c.

Q. Give me the first person singular through all Moods and Tenses in both Active and Passive voice together.

A. *Amo*, I love, *amor* I am loved; *amabam*, I loved; *amabar*, I was loved; *amavi*, I have loved, *amatus sum vel fui*, I have been loved.

Q. Give

Q. Give me the Terminations of Verbs in o alone of the first Conjugation.

A. O, abam, avi, amaveram, abo &c.

Q. Run over the Terminations of all the Persons of the first Conjugation.

A. O, as, at, amus, atis, ant, abam, abas, abat, abamus, &c.

Q. What must you run in your minde, when you say these terminations?

A. Do, did, Have, had, Shall or will; and I, Thou, He, We, Ye, They, thus together, I do, o; thou doest, as; He doth, at; We do, amus, &c.

Q. If you be asked of any person which you cannot tell, how must you do to finde it?

A. I must call to minde the first person of that Tense, and run the rest in my minde untill I come to it: as if I be asked how I say, ye shall read I strait remember Legam, I shall read, and so running in my minde, am, es, et, emus, eis, ent: and withall if I call to minde the Persons, I, Thou, He, We, Ye, They: I finde Legetis, Ye shall read.

Ask the rest of the questions about a Verb, out of the Tables.

Of a Participle.

Q. What is the fifth part of Speech?

A. A Participle.

Q. Why is it called a Participle?

A. Of taking part, because it hath nothing but what it borrows from others.

Q. What belongs to a Noun that doth not belong to a Participle?

A. Special Rule, and Comparifon.

Q. Are not some Participles compared?

A. Yes.

Q. Why then do you say that Comparifon belongs to a Noun, and not to a Participle.

A. Because they are not compared as Participles, but as they are changed into Nouns, Adjectives.

Q. How many things belong to a Participle?

A. Six, Gender, Case, Number, Declension, Tense and signification.

Of an Adverb.

Q. How many things belong to an Adverb?

A. Two. viz. Signification and Comparifon.

Q. What is the signification of an Adverb?

A. It is divers, according to the circumstances of a thing, time, place, number, order, quality, quantity. &c.

Of a Conjunction.

Q. How many things belong to a Conjunction?

A. Two. Signification and Order.

Q. What is the signification of a Conjunction?

A. Divers

A. Divers, viz. *Disjunctive, Copulative, Causal, &c.*

Q. *What is the order of a Conjunction ?*

A. The setting of Conjunctions, every one in its place, that is, setting, *nam, ac, &c.* at the beginning of a sentence : but *quidem, quoque, autem, verò, enim,* are never to be placed at the beginning, but in the second third or fourth place as occasion serveth : and *que ne ve,* which are joyned at the end of other words, and being Encliticks do cast their accent upon a syllable going before.

Of a Preposition.

Q. **W**hat mean you by a Preposition set in Apposition ?

A. When a Preposition is set before (or after) another word so as it is no part of the word; but it is an absolute word of it self, as *ad Templum, à Scholâ.*

Q. *What mean you by a Preposition in Composition ?*

A. When a Preposition is joyned, or set before another word, so as that it is a part of the word to which it is joyned, as *advenio.*

Q. *How many things belong to a Preposition ?*

A. Onely one, namely *Regiment,* or governing some case.

Q. *How many Prepositions govern an Accusative case onely ?*

A. Thirty two, *Ad to; apud at; ante, before, &c.*

Q. *How many Prepositions govern an Ablative case onely ?*

A. Fifteen, *A, ab, abs, from or fro; cum, with, &c.*

Q. *How many govern an Accusative and an Ablative ?*

A. Five. *In, Sub, Super, Subter, Clam.*

Of an Interjection.

Q. **H**ow many things belong to an Interjection ?

A. Onely one, Namely *Signification* ; which is divers, according to the motions and passions in the minde, namely, *mirth, sorrow, &c.*

The declining of Pronouns both in Latine and English.

The first Declension of Pronouns.

		M. F.	M. F.
		Man or woman.	Man or woman.
Singulariter	Nominat.	Ego, I.	Tu, Thou, or you.
	Genit.	Mei, of me.	Tui, of thee, or of you.
	Dat.	Mihi, to me.	Tibi, to thee, or to you.
	Accus.	Me, me.	Te, thee, or you.
	Voc.		Tu, thou, or you.
	Ablat.	Me, from me.	Te, from thee, or from you.
		Men or women.	Men or women.
Pluraliter.	Nom.	Nos, we or us.	Vos, ye, or you.
	Gen.	Nostrium } of us.	Vestrum } of you.
		Nostri }	Vestri }
	Dat.	Nobis, to us.	Vobis, to you.
	Acc.	Nos, us.	Vos, you.
	Voc.		Vos, O ye, or O you.
	Abl.	Nobis, from us.	Vobis, from you.

		M. F. N.	M.	F.	N.
			Man	Woman	Thing.
Singulariter	Gen.	Sui	of himself,	of her self,	of it self.
	Dat.	Sibi	to himself,	to her self,	to it self.
	Acc.	Se	himself,	her self,	it self.
	Voc.				
	Abl.	Se	from himself,	from her self,	from it self.
		M. F. N.			
Pluraliter.	Gen.	Sui	of themselves,	Masc.	Fem. Neut.
	Dat.	Sibi	to themselves,	Viz. Men, Women, Things:	
	Acc.	Se	themselves,		
	Voc.				
	Abl.	Se	from themselves,		

The second Declension of Pronouns.

		Masc.	Man,	Fem.	Woman,	Neut.	Thing.
Singulariter	Nom.	Ille	he	Illa	she	Illud	that.
	Gen.	Illius	of him, or his,	Illius	of her, or her,	Illius	of that.
	Dat.	Illī	to him,	Illī	to her,	Illī	to that.
	Acc.	Illum	him,	Illam	her,	Illud	that.
	Voc.						
	Abl.	Illo	from him,	Illā	from her,	Illo	from that.
				E			Masc.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Men,</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Women,</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Things.</i>
Pluraliter	Nom. Illi	they,	Illæ	they,	Illæ	those.
	Gen. Illorum	of them,	Illarum	of them,	Illorum	of those.
	Dat. Illis	to them,	Illis	to them,	Illis	to those.
	Acc. Illos	them,	Illas	them,	Illas	those.
	Voc. Illis					
	Abl. Illis	from them,	Illis	from them,	Illis	from those.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Man,</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Woman,</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Thing.</i>
Singulariter	Nom. Ipse	he himself,	Ipsa	she her self,	Ipsum	it self.
	Gen. Ipsi	of himself,	Ipius	of her self,	Ipius	of it self.
	Dat. Ipsi	to himself,	Ipsi	to her self,	Ipsi	to it self.
	Acc. Ipsum	himself,	Ipsam	her self,	Ipsum	it self,
	Voc. Ipse					
	Abl. Ipso	from himself,	Ipsâ	from her self,	Ipso	from it self.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>Men,</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>Women,</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>Things.</i>
Pluraliter	Nom. Ipsi		Ipsæ		Ipsæ	themselves.
	Gen. Ipforum		Ipsarum		Ipforum	of themselves
	Dat. Iphis		Iphis		Iphis	to themselves.
	Acc. Ipsos		Ipsas		Ipsas	themselves.
	Voc. Ipsi					
	Abl. Iphis		Iphis		Iphis	from themselves.

} or the very same.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>Man,</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>Woman,</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>Thing.</i>
Singulariter	Nom. Iste		Ista		Istud	that.
	Gen. Istius		Istius		Istius	of that,
	Dat. Isti		Isti		Isti	to that,
	Acc. Istum		Istam		Istud	that,
	Voc. Isti					
	Abl. Isto		Istâ		Isto	from that,
	<i>M.</i>	<i>Men,</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>Women,</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>Things.</i>
Pluraliter	Nom. Isti		Istæ		Istæ	those,
	Gen. Istorum		Istarum		Istorum	of those,
	Dat. Istis		Istis		Istis	to those,
	Acc. Istos		Istas		Istas	those,
	Voc. Isti					
	Abl. Istis		Istis		Istis	from those,

} this, or yond.

} these, or yond.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Man,</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Woman,</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Thing.</i>
Singul.	Nom. Hic	this	hec	this	hoc	this.
	Gen. Hujus	of this	hujus	of this	hujus	of this.
	Dat. Huic	to this	huic	to this	huic	to this, &c.
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Men,</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Women,</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Things.</i>
Plural.	Nom. Hi	these	hæ	these	hec	these.
	Gen. Horum	of these	harum	of these	horum	of these.
	Dat. His	to these	his	to these	his	to these, &c.

Masc.

	<i>Masc.</i>	Man,	<i>Fem.</i>	Woman,	<i>Neut.</i>	Thing.	
Singulariter	Nom.	Is	he,	ea	she,	id	that, or it.
	Gen.	Ejus	of him, or his,	ejus	of her, or her,	ejus	of that, or of it.
	Dat.	Ei	to him,	ei	to her,	ei	to that, or to it.
	Acc.	Eum	him	eam	her	id	that, or it.
	Voc.						from that,
Pluraliter	Abl.	Eo	from him,	ea	from her,	eo	or from it.
		<i>Masc.</i>	Men,	<i>Fem.</i>	Women,	<i>Neut.</i>	Things.
	Nom.	Ii	they,	ea	they,	ea	those.
	Gen.	Eorū	of thē, or their,	earum	of thē, or their,	eorum	of those.
	Dat.	Iis, eis	to them,	iis, eis	to them,	iis, eis	to those.
	Acc.	Eos	them,	cas	them,	ca	those.
	Voc.						
	Abl.	Iis, eis	from them,	iis, eis	from them,	iis, eis	from those.

	<i>Masc.</i>	Man,	<i>Fem.</i>	Woman,	<i>Neut.</i>	Thing.	
Singulariter	Nom.	Qui	<i>which, or who,</i>	quæ	<i>which, or who,</i>	quod <i>which.</i>	
	Gen.	Cujus	<i>of which,</i>	cujus	<i>of which,</i>	cujus <i>of which.</i>	
	Dat.	Cui	<i>to which,</i>	cui	<i>to which,</i>	cui <i>to which.</i>	
	Acc.	Quem	<i>which</i>	quam	<i>which</i>	quod <i>which.</i>	
	Voc.						
	Abl.	Quo, v. quī	<i>frō which,</i>	quā, v. quī	<i>frō which,</i>	quo, v. quī <i>frō which.</i>	
	<i>Masc.</i>	Men,	<i>Fem.</i>	Women,	<i>Neut.</i>	Things.	
Pluraliter	Nom.	Qui	<i>which, or who,</i>	quæ	<i>which, or who,</i>	quæ <i>which, or what.</i>	
	Gen.	Quorū	<i>of which, or of whō, q.</i>	of which, or of whō, q.	<i>of which, or of whō, q.</i>	of which, or of whō, q. <i>of which, or what</i>	
	Dat.	{ Quibus }	<i>to which, or</i>	{ quibus }	<i>to which, or</i>	{ quibus }	<i>to which,</i>
		{ Queis }	<i>to whom,</i>	{ queis }	<i>to whom,</i>	{ queis }	<i>or to what</i>
	Acc.	Quos	<i>which, or whom,</i>	quas	<i>which, or whom,</i>	quæ	<i>which, or what.</i>
	Voc.						
	Abl.	{ Quibus }	<i>frō w^{ch}, or</i>	{ quibus }	<i>frō w^{ch}, or</i>	{ quibus }	<i>frō w^{ch}, or</i>
		{ Queis }	<i>frō whom,</i>	{ queis }	<i>frō whom,</i>	{ queis }	<i>from what.</i>

	<i>Masc.</i>	Man,	<i>Fem.</i>	Woman,	<i>Neut.</i>	Thing.	
Singulariter	Nom.	Quis	who,	quæ	who,	quid	what.
	Gen.	Cujus	{ of whom, whose, whereof,	Cujus	{ of whom, whose, whereof,	cujus	of what.
	Dat.	Cui	to whom,	cui	to whom,	cui	to what.
	Acc.	Quem	whom,	quam	whom,	quid	what.
	Voc.						
	Abl.	{ Quo, vel Qui	{ from whom,	{ quâ qui	{ from whom,	{ quo qui	frō what, &c.

The third Declension of Pronouns.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Singulariter	Nom. Me-us	me-a	me-um <i>my, or mine.</i>
	Gen. Me-i	me-æ	me-i <i>of my, or of mine.</i>
	Dat. Me-o	me-æ	me-o <i>to my, or to mine.</i>
	Acc. Me-um	me-am	me-um <i>my, or mine.</i>
	Voc. M-i	me-a	me-um <i>ô my, or ô mine.</i>
	Abl. Me-o	me-â	me-o <i>from my, or from mine.</i>
Pluraliter	Nom. Me-i	me-æ	me-a <i>my, or mine.</i>
	Gen. Me-orum	me-arum	meo-rum <i>of my, or of mine.</i>
	Dat. Me-is	me-is	me-is <i>to my, or to mine.</i>
	Acc. Me-os	me-as	me-a <i>my, or mine.</i>
	Voc. Me-i	me-æ	me-a <i>ô my, or ô mine.</i>
	Abl. Me-is	me-is	me-is <i>from my, or from mine.</i>

Singulariter	Nom. Tu-us	tu-a	tu-um <i>thy, or thine.</i>
	Gen. Tu-i	tu-æ	tu-i <i>of thy, or of thine.</i>
	Dat. Tu-o	tu-æ	tu-o <i>to thy, or to thine.</i>
	Acc. Tu-um	tu-am	tu-um <i>thy, or thine.</i>
	Voc.		
	Abl. Tu-o	tu-â	tu-o <i>from thy, or from thine.</i>
Pluraliter	Nom. Tu-i	tu-æ	tu-a <i>thy, or thine.</i>
	Gen. Tu-orum	tu-arum	tu-orum <i>of thy, or of thine.</i>
	Dat. Tu-is	tu-is	tu-is <i>to thy, or to thine.</i>
	Acc. Tu-os	tu-as	tu-a <i>thy, or thine.</i>
	Voc.		
	Abl. Tu-is	tu-is	tu-is <i>from thy, or from thine.</i>

Note that *Cujus* is referred hither by some; is made a Pronoun, and declined like *Mew*, thus : Nom. *Cujus*, *Cuja*, *Cujum*, *whose*, &c.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Singulariter	Nom. Su-us	su-a	su-um <i>his, their, or theirs.</i>
	Gen. Su-i	su-æ	su-i <i>of his, or of their.</i>
	Dat. Su-o	su-æ	su-o <i>to his, or to their.</i>
	Acc. Suum	su-am	su-um <i>his, or their.</i>
	Voc.		
	Abl. Su-o	su-â	su-o <i>from his, or from their.</i>
Pluraliter	Nom. Su-i	su-æ	su-a <i>his, or their.</i>
	Gen. Su-orum	su-arum	su-orum <i>of his, or of their.</i>
	Dat. Su-is	su-is	su-is <i>to his, or to their.</i>
	Acc. Su-os	su-as	su-a <i>his, or their.</i>
	Voc.		
	Abl. Su-is	su-is	su-is <i>from his, or from their.</i>

Masc.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Singulariter	Nom. Nost-er	nost-ra	nost-rum <i>our</i> , or <i>ours</i> .
	Gen. Nost-ri	nost-ræ	nost-ri <i>of our</i> , or <i>of ours</i> .
	Dat. Nost-ro	nost-ræ	nost-ro <i>to our</i> , or <i>to ours</i> .
	Acc. Nost-rum	nost-ram	nost-rum <i>our</i> , or <i>ours</i> .
	Voc. Nost-er	nost-ra	nost-rum <i>ô our</i> , or <i>ô ours</i> .
	Abl. Nost-ro	nost-râ	nost-ro <i>from our</i> , or <i>from ours</i> .
Pluraliter	Nom. Nost-ri	nost-ræ	nost-ra <i>our</i> , or <i>ours</i> .
	Gen. Nost-rorum	nost-rarum	nost-rorum <i>of our</i> , or <i>of ours</i> .
	Dat. Nost-ris	nost-ris	nost-ris <i>to our</i> , or <i>to ours</i> .
	Acc. Nost-ros	nost-ras	nost-ra <i>our</i> , or <i>ours</i> .
	Voc. Nost-ri	nost-ræ	nost-ra <i>ô our</i> , or <i>ô ours</i> .
	All. Nost-ris	nost-ris	nost-ris <i>from our</i> , or <i>from ours</i> .
Singulariter	Nom. Vest-er	vest-ra	vest-rum <i>your</i> , or <i>yours</i> .
	Gen. Vest-ri	vest-ræ	vest-ri <i>of your</i> , or <i>of yours</i> .
	Dat. Vest-ro	vest-ræ	vest-ro <i>to your</i> , or <i>to yours</i> .
	Acc. Vest-rum	vest-ram	vest-rum <i>your</i> , or <i>yours</i> .
	Voc.		
	Abl. Vest-ro	vest-râ	vest-ro <i>from your</i> , or <i>frô yours</i> .
Pluraliter	Nom. Vest-ri	vest-ræ	vest-ra <i>your</i> , or <i>yours</i> .
	Gen. Vest-rorum	vest-rarum	vest-rorû <i>of your</i> , or <i>of yours</i> .
	Dat. Vest-ris	vest-ris	vest-ris <i>to your</i> , or <i>to yours</i> .
	Acc. Vest-ros	vest-ras	vest-ra <i>your</i> , or <i>yours</i> .
	Voc.		
	Abl. Vest-ris	vest-ris	vest-ris <i>frô your</i> , or <i>frô yours</i> .

N. B. That *Tu*, *Mens*, *Noster*, and *Nostras* have the Vocative case, and all other Pronouns want it. *Et Pronomina præter quatuor hæc infra, noster, nostras, meus & tu. Meus, Tuus, Suus*, are declined like *Bonus*, except in the Vocat. Singul. where *Mens* makes *Mi* in the Masc. Gender, and not *Mee*, like *Bone*. Note also, That *Noster* and *Vester* are declined like *Niger*.

The fourth Declension of Pronouns.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Singulariter	Nom. Nostras	nostras	nostrate <i>on our side</i> , or <i>country</i> .
	Gen. Nostratis	nostratis	nostratis <i>of our side</i> .
	Dat. Nostrati	nostrati	nostrati <i>to our side</i> .
	Acc. Nostratem	nostratem	nostrate <i>our side</i> .
	Voc. Nostras	nostras	nostrate <i>ô our side</i> .
	Abl. { Nostrate, vel } { Nostrati }	{ nostrate, vel } { nostrati }	{ nostrate, vel } { nostrati } <i>from our side</i> .
Pluraliter	Nom. Nostrates	nostrates	nostratia <i>our sides</i> .
	Gen. Nostratium	nostratium	nostratium <i>of our sides</i> .
	Dat. Nostratibus	nostratibus	nostratibus <i>to our sides</i> .
	Acc. Nostrates	nostrates	nostratia <i>our sides</i> .
	Voc. Nostrates	nostrates	nostratia <i>ô our sides</i> .
	Abl. Nostratibus	nostratibus	nostratibus <i>from our sides</i> .

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Singulariter	Nom. Vestras	vestras	vestrate on your side.
	Gen. Vestratis	vestratis	vestratis of your side.
	Dat. Vestrati	vestrati	vestrati to your side.
	Acc. Vestratem	vestratem	vestrate your side.
	Voc.		
	Abl. { Vestrate, vel } { Vestrati }	vestrate, vel vestrati	{ vestrate, vel } { vestrati } from your side.
Pluraliter	Nom. Vestrates	vestrates	vestratia your sides.
	Gen. Vestratium	vestratium	vestratium of your sides.
	Dat. Vestratibus	vestratibus	vestratibus to your sides.
	Acc. Vestrates	vestrates	vestratia your sides.
	Voc.		
	Abl. Vestratibus	vestratibus	vestratibus from your sides.
<hr/>			
Singular.	Nom. Cujas	cujas	cujate on what side.
	Gen. Cujatis	cujatis	cujatis of what side.
	Dat. Cujati	cujati	cujati to what side.
	Acc. Cujatem	cujatem	cujate what side, &c.

Cujas es ? What countrey man are you ? or of what countrey ? of what stock ? lineage ? *icet* ? or party are you ?

To the first Declension of Pronouns are referred, *Egomet, Tate, Tutemet,* (not *Tumet*), *Sibimet,* and the like compounds.

	<i>M. F.</i>	Man or Woman,	<i>M. F.</i>	Man or Woman.
Singulariter	Nom. Egomet	<i>I my self.</i>	Tutemet	<i>thou thy self.</i>
	Gen. Meimet	<i>of me my self.</i>	Tuimet	<i>of thou thy self.</i>
	Dat. Mihimet	<i>to me my self.</i>	Tibimet	<i>to thee thy self.</i>
	Acc. Memet	<i>me my self.</i>	Temet	<i>thee thy self.</i>
	Voc.			
	Abl. Memet	<i>from me, my self.</i>	Temet	<i>frō thee thy self.</i>
<hr/>				
	<i>M. F.</i>	Men or Women.	<i>M. F.</i>	Men or Women.
Plural.	Nom. Nosmet	<i>we our selves.</i>	Vosmet	<i>ye your selves.</i>
	Acc. Nosmet	<i>we our selves.</i>	Vosmet	<i>you your selves.</i>
	Voc.		Vosmet	<i>ō ye, or you your selves.</i>

	<i>M. F.</i>	Man or Woman.
Sing.	Nom. Tute	<i>thou thy self, or you your self.</i>
	Acc. Tete	<i>thee thy self, or you your self.</i>

	Man,	Woman,	Thing.
P.	Dat. Sibimet	<i>to himself,</i>	<i>to her self, to it self, to themselves.</i>
	Acc. Semet	<i>himself,</i>	<i>her self, it self, themselves.</i>

To

**To the second Declension of Pronouns
belong these Compounds.**

	<i>M. Man,</i>	<i>Fem. Woman,</i>	<i>Neut. Thing.</i>
<i>Singulariter</i>	Nom. Idem	Eadem	Idem the same
	Gen. Eiusdem of	Eiusdem of	Eiusdē of the same
	Dat. Eidem to	Eidem to	Eidem to the same
	Acc. Eundem	Eandem	Idem the same
	Voc. Eodem from	Eādem frō	Eodē frō the same
	Abl. Eodem from	Eādem frō	Eodē frō the same
<i>Plur.</i>	Nom. Idem	eādem	eadem the same, or very same.
	Gen. Eorundem	earundem	eorundem of the same, &c.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Plur. Singular.</i>	Nom. Isthic	isthæc	isthoc, <i>vel</i> isthuc this, or that.
	Acc. Isthunc	isthanc	isthoc, <i>vel</i> isthuc this, or that.
	Abl. Isthoc	isthâc	isthoc from this, or from that.
<i>Plur.</i>	Nom. } So is <i>Illie</i> declined.		isthæc these, or those.
	Acc. }		

	<i>Masc. Man,</i>	<i>Fem. Woman,</i>	<i>Neut. Thing.</i>
<i>Singular.</i>	Nom. Quidam	quædam	quoddâ, <i>v.</i> quiddâ
	Gen. Cuiusdam of	cuiusdam of	cuiusdam of
	Dat. Cuidam to	cuidam to	cuidam to
	Acc. Quendam	quandam	quoddâ, <i>v.</i> quiddâ

Like *Quidam* are declined *Quivis*, *Quilibet*, *Quicunque*.

	<i>Masc. Man,</i>	<i>Fem. Woman,</i>	<i>Neut. Thing.</i>
<i>Singular.</i>	Nom. Quisquis <i>whosoever</i> , or		quicquid <i>whatsoever</i> .
	Acc. } <i>whosoever</i>		quicquid <i>whatsoever</i> .
	Abl. Quoquo	quaquâ	quoquo } from <i>whomsoever</i> , or
			from <i>whatsoever</i> .

<i>Singular.</i>	Nom. Quicunque	quæcunque	quodcunque	} <i>whosoever</i> , } <i>whomsoever</i> , } <i>whatsoever</i> .
	Gen. Cuiuscunque	cuiuscunque	cuiuscunque of	
	Dat. Cuicunque	cuicunque	cuicunque to	
	Acc. Quemcunque	quamcunque	quodcunque	

	<i>Masc. Man,</i>	<i>Fem. Woman,</i>	<i>Neut. Thing.</i>
<i>Singulariter</i>	Nom. Aliquis	Aliqua	Aliquod
	Gen. Alicujus of	Alicujus of	Alicujus of
	Dat. Alicui to	Alicui to	Alicui to
	Acc. Aliquem	Aliquam	Aliquod
	Voc. Aliquo frō	Aliquâ frō	Aliquo frō
	Abl. Aliquo frō	Aliquâ frō	Aliquo frō

Like *Aliquis*, are declined *Nequis*, no one, or not any : *Nunquis*, whether any one, *Siquis*, if any one, all which in the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. make *qua* not *quæ*.

	Masc. Man,	Fem. Woman,	Neut. Thing.
Singular.	Nom. { Ecquis } <i>who</i> , or { Ecqui } <i>what one</i>	{ ecquæ } <i>who</i> , or { ecqua } <i>what one</i>	{ ecquod } <i>what</i> .
	Gen. Eccujus of whom	eccujus of whom	eccujus of what.
	Dat. Eccui to whom	eccui to whom	eccui to what.

Ecquis is declined like *Aliquis* save in the Nominative Singular.

	Masc. Man,	Fem. Woman,	Neut. Thing.
Singular.	Nom. <i>Quisnam</i> <i>who</i> ?	<i>quænam</i> <i>who</i> ?	{ <i>quodnam</i> <i>what</i> ?
			{ <i>quidnam</i>
	Gen. <i>Cujusnam</i> of <i>whom</i> ?	<i>cujusnam</i> of <i>whom</i> ?	<i>cujusnam</i> of <i>what</i> ?
	Dat. <i>Cuinam</i> to <i>whom</i> ?	<i>cuinam</i> to <i>whom</i> ?	<i>cuinam</i> to <i>what</i> ?

Like *Quisnam* are declined *Quispiam* any body ; *Quispias*, who trowest thou ; *Quisquam*, some body ; *Quisque*, every one.

	Masc. Man,	Fem. Woman,	Neut. Thing.
Plur. Singul.	Nom. <i>Hic</i> <i>is this the</i> ?	<i>hæc</i> <i>is this the</i> ?	<i>hoc</i> <i>is this the</i> ?
	Acc. <i>Hunc</i> <i>what this</i> ?	<i>hanc</i> <i>what this</i> ?	<i>hoc</i> <i>what this</i> ?
	Abl. <i>Hoc</i> <i>what frõ this</i> ?	<i>hæc</i> <i>what frõ this</i> ?	<i>hoc</i> <i>wt. frõ this</i> ?
	Nom. {		
	Acc. }		<i>Hæc</i> <i>what these</i> ?

So is *Hic, Ille, Iste* declined with *ce* as oft as their cases end in *S*.

	Masc.	M.	Fem.	W.
Accu.	{ <i>Eccura</i>	<i>lo where he is.</i>	<i>Eccam</i>	<i>lo where she is.</i>
	{ <i>Eccos</i>	<i>lo where they are.</i>	<i>Eccas</i>	<i>lo where they are.</i>
Gen.	{ <i>Cujusmodi</i> , or <i>cujusdammodi</i> , of <i>what sort or manner</i> ?			
	{ <i>Hujusmodi</i> , or <i>hujusmodi</i> , of <i>this sort or manner</i> .			
	{ <i>Illiusmodi</i> , of <i>that sort</i> , or <i>after that manner</i> .			
Sing.	{ <i>Istiusmodi</i> , & <i>eiusmodi</i> , of <i>the same sort or manner</i> .			

To the third Declension of Pronouns belong these Ablatives, viz. *Meapte*, of mine own ; *Tuapte* of thine own ; *Suapte* of his own ; *Nostrapte* of our own ; *Vestrapte* of your own. Sometimes the Pronouns are compounded with themselves.

Nom. <i>Egoipse</i> <i>I myself</i> .	<i>Tuipse</i> <i>thou thyself</i> .
Gen. <i>Meipsius</i> of <i>me my self</i> .	<i>Tuiipsius</i> of <i>thy self</i> .
Dat. <i>Mihiipsi</i> to <i>me my self</i> .	<i>Tibiipsi</i> to <i>thy self</i> .
Acc. <i>Meipsum</i> <i>me my self</i> .	<i>Teipsum</i> <i>thy self</i> .

So *Suipsius*, *sibiipsi*, *seipsum*, *seipse*, &c. *himself*, or *themselves*.

The

The manner of writing a Verb without the English.

An Example of the first Conjugation.

Active Voice.

Indicative Mood.

Voc-o,
Voc-amus,
Voc-abam,
Voc-abamus,
Voc-avi,
Voc-avimus,

Voc-averam,
Voc-averamus,
Voc-abo,
Voc-abimus,

Voc-as,
Voc-atis,
Voc-abas,
Voc-abatis,
Voc-avisti,
Voc-avistis,

Voc-averas,
Voc-averatis,
Voc-abis,
Voc-abitis,

Voc-at:
Voc-ant,
Voc-abat:
Voc-abant,
Voc-avit;
{ Voc-averunt,
{ Voc-avere.
Voc-averat:
Voc-averant,
Voc-abit:
Voc-abunt,

Imperative Mood.

Voc-emus,

{ Voc-a,
{ Vocato,
{ Voc-are,
{ Vocatote,

Voc-er,
Voc-ato:
Voc-ent,
Voc-anto,

Potential Mood.

Voc-em,
Voc-emus,
Voc-arem,
Voc-aremus,
Voc-averim,
Voc-averimus,
Voc-avissem,
Voc-avissemus,
Voc-avero,
Voc-averimus,

Voc-es,
Voc-etis,
Voc-ares,
Voc-aretis,
Voc-averis,
Voc-averitis,
Voc-avisses,
Voc-avissetis,
Voc-averis,
Voc-averitis,

Voc-et:
Voc-ent,
Voc-aret:
Voc-arent,
Voc-averit:
Voc-averint,
Voc-avisset:
Voc-avissent,
Voc-averit:
Voc-averint,

Infinitive Mood.

Present & Preterimp.

Voc-are,
Gerunds.
{ Voc-andi,
{ Voc-ando,
{ Voc-andum,

Preterperf. & Preterpl.

Voc-avisse.
Supines.
Voc-atum,
Voc-atu,

Future tense.

Voc-aturum esse.
Participles.
Voc-ans,
Voc-aturus,

Passive

Passive Voice.

Voc-or,	{ Voc-aris, v. Voc are, Voc-amini.	Voc-atur :
Voc-amur,	{ Voc-abaris, v. } Voc-abare, Voc-abamini,	Voc-antur.
Voc-abar,	{ Voc-abatus es, v. Voc-abatus fuisti, Voc-abati es, v. Voc-abati fuistis,	Voc-abatur :
Voc-abamur,	{ Voc-abatus eram, v. Voc-abatus fueram, Voc-abati eramus, v. Voc-abati fuimus,	Voc-abantur.
{ Voc-abatus sum, v. Voc-abatus fui, Voc-abati sumus, v. Voc-abati fuimus,	{ Voc-abatus es, v. Voc-abatus fuisti, Voc-abati es, v. Voc-abati fuistis,	Voc-abatus est, v. Voc-abatus fuit :
{ Voc-abatus eram, v. Voc-abatus fueram, Voc-abati eramus, v. Voc-abati fuimus,	Voc-abatus eras, v. Voc-abatus fueras, Voc-abati eratis, v. Voc-abati fueratis, Voc-aberis, v. Voc-abere, Voc-abimini,	Voc-abati sunt, Voc-abati fuerunt, Voc-abati fuere.
Voc-abimur,	{ Voc-are, Voc-ator, Voc-amini, Voc-aminor, Voc-eris, v. Voc-ere, Voc-eminus, Voc-areris, v. Voc-arere,	Voc-abatus erat, v. Voc-abatus fuerat. Voc-abati erant, v. Voc-abati fuerant. Voc-abitur :
Voc-emur,	{ Voc-are, Voc-ator, Voc-amini, Voc-aminor, Voc-eris, v. Voc-ere, Voc-eminus, Voc-areris, v. Voc-arere,	Voc-abuntur.
Voc-er,	{ Voc-are, Voc-ator, Voc-amini, Voc-aminor, Voc-eris, v. Voc-ere, Voc-eminus, Voc-areris, v. Voc-arere,	Voc-etur, Voc-atur :
Voc-emur,	{ Voc-are, Voc-ator, Voc-amini, Voc-aminor, Voc-eris, v. Voc-ere, Voc-eminus, Voc-areris, v. Voc-arere,	Voc-entur.
Voc-arer,	{ Voc-are, Voc-ator, Voc-amini, Voc-aminor, Voc-eris, v. Voc-ere, Voc-eminus, Voc-areris, v. Voc-arere,	Voc-aretur :
Voc-aremur,	{ Voc-are, Voc-ator, Voc-amini, Voc-aminor, Voc-eris, v. Voc-ere, Voc-eminus, Voc-areris, v. Voc-arere,	Voc-arentur.
{ Voc-atum sis, v. Voc-atum fuerim, Voc-ati sumus, v. Voc-ati fuimus, Voc-atum essem, v. Voc-atum fuisset, Voc-ati essemus, v. Voc-ati fuissetis, Voc-atum ero, v. Voc-atum fuero, Voc-ati erimus, v. Voc-ati fuerimus, Voc-ati.	{ Voc-are, Voc-ator, Voc-amini, Voc-aminor, Voc-eris, v. Voc-ere, Voc-eminus, Voc-areris, v. Voc-arere,	Voc-atum sit, v. Voc-atum fuerit : Voc-ati sint, v. Voc-ati fuerint. Voc-atum esset, v. Voc-atum fuisset, Voc-ati essent, v. Voc-ati fuissent. Voc-atum erit, v. Voc-atum fuerit. Voc-ati erunt, v. Voc-ati fuerint.
Voc-atum.	{ Voc-atum esse, v. Voc-atum fuisse, Voc-andus,	{ Voc-atum iri, v. Voc-andum esse.

An Example of the second Conjugation.

Active Voice.

Indicative Mood.

Ten-eo,
Ten-emus,
Ten-ebam,
Ten-ebamus,
Ten-ui,
Ten-uimus,

Ten-ueram,
Ten-ueramus,
Ten-ebo,
Ten-ebimus,

Ten-es,
Ten-eris,
Ten-ebas,
Ten-ebatis,
Ten-uisti,
Ten-uistis,

Ten-ueras,
Ten-ueratis,
Ten-ebis,
Ten-ebitis,

Ten-et:
Ten-ent,
Ten-ebat:
Ten-ebant,
Ten-uit:
Ten-uêrunt,
Ten-uêre.
Ten-uerat:
Ten-uerant,
Ten-ebit:
Ten-ebunt,

Imperative Mood.

Ten-eamus,

{ Ten-e,
{ Ten-eto;
{ Ten-ete,
{ Ten-etore,

Ten-eat,
Ten-eto;
Ten-eant,
Ten-ento,

Potential Mood.

Ten-eam,
Ten-eamus,
Ten-erem,
Ten-eremus,
Ten-uerim,
Ten-uêrimus,
Ten-uissim,
Ten-uissimus,
Ten-uerio,
Ten-uerimus,

Ten-eas,
Ten-eatis,
Ten-eres,
Ten-eretis,
Ten-ueris,
Ten-uêritis,
Ten-uisses,
Ten-uissetis,
Ten-ueris,
Ten-ueritis,

Ten-eat:
Ten-eant,
Ten-eret:
Ten-erent,
Ten-uerit:
Ten-uerint,
Ten-uisset:
Ten-uissent,
Ten-uerit:
Ten-uerint,

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. & Preterimp.

Ten-ere.

Gerunds.

{ Ten-endi,
{ Ten-endo,
{ Ten-endum.

Preterp. & Preterpl.

Ten-uisse.

Supines.

Tent-um,
Tent-u.

Future tense.

Tent-urum esse.

Participles.

Tent-ens,
Tent-urus.

Passive

Passive Voice.

Ten-eor,	{ Ten-eris, v.	Ten-etur :
Ten-emur,	{ Ten-ere,	Ten-entur.
Ten-ebar,	{ Ten-ementi,	Ten-ebatur :
Ten-ebamur,	{ Ten-ebrais, v.	Tene-bantur.
{ Tent-us sum, v.	{ Ten-ebare,	Tent-us est, v.
{ Tent-us fui,	Ten-ebamini,	Tent-us fuit.
{ Tent-i sumus, v.	Tent-us es, v.	{ Tent-i sunt,
{ Tent-i fuimus,	Tent-us fuisti.	Tent-i fuērunt,
	Tent-i estis, v.	Tent-i fuere.
	Tent-i fuistis,	Tent-us erat, v.
		Tent-us fuerat.
{ Tent-us eram, v.	Tent-us fueras.	Tent-i erant, v.
{ Tent-us fueram,	Tent-i eratis, v.	Tent-i fuerant.
{ Tent-ieramus, v.	Tent-i fueratis,	Ten-ebitur :
{ Tent-i fueramus,	{ Ten-eberis, }	Ten-ebuntur.
Ten-ebor,	{ Ten-ebere, }	Ten-eatur,
Ten-ebimur,	Ten-ebimini,	Ten-eror :
	{ Ten-ere,	Ten-eantur,
	{ Ten-etor,	Ten-entor.
Ten-eamur,	{ Ten-ementi,	Ten-eatur :
Ten-eat,	{ Ten-eminor,	
	{ Ten-eatis,	
	{ Ten-eare,	
Ten-eamur,	Ten-eamini,	
Ten-eretur,	{ Ten-eretur,	
	{ Ten-erere,	
	Ten-erementi,	
	Tent-us sis, v.	
	Tent-us fueris,	
	Tent-i sis, v.	
	Tent-i fueritis,	
	Tent-us esses, v.	
	Tent-us fuisses,	
	Tent-i esses, v.	
	Tent-i fuissetis,	
	Tent-i fuissetis,	
	Tent-us ero, v.	
	Tent-us fuero,	
	Tent-i erimus, v.	
	Tent-i fueritis,	
Ten-eri,	Tent-i fueritis,	
	{ Tent-am esse, v.	
	{ Tent-am fuisse.	
Tent-us.	Ten-endus,	

An Example of the third Conjugation.

Active Voice.

Indicative Mood.

Scrib-o,
Scrib-imus,
Scrib-ebam,
Scrib-ebamus,
Scrips-i,
Scrips-imus,

Scrips-eram,
Scrips-eramus,
Scrib-am,
Scrib-emus,

Scrib-is,
Scrib-itis,
Scrib-ebas,
Scrib-ebatis,
Scrips-isti,
Scrips-istis,

Scrips-eras,
Scrips-eratis,
Scrib-es,
Scrib-etis,

Scrib-it :
Scrib-unt,
Scrib-ebat :
Scrib-ebant,
Scrips-it ;
Scrips-erunt,
Scrips-ère.
Scrips-erat :
Scrips-erant.
Scrib-et :
Scrib-ent.

Imperative Mood.

Scrib-amus,

{ Scrib-e,
{ Scrib-ito,
{ Scrib-ite,
{ Scrib-itote,

Scrib-at,
Scrib-ito ;
Scrib-ant,
Scrib unto.

Potential Mood.

Scrib-am,
Scrib-amus,
Scrib-erem,
Scrib-eremus,
Scrips-erim,
Scrips-erimus,
Scrips-issẽm,
Scrips-issẽmus,
Scrips-ero,
Scrips-erimus,

Scrib-as,
Scrib-atis,
Scrib-eres,
Scrib-eretis,
Scrips-eris,
Scrips-eritis,
Scrips-isses,
Scrips-issetis,
Scrips-eris,
Scrips-eritis,

Scrib at :
Scrib-ant.
Scrib-eret :
Scrib-erent.
Scrips-erit :
Scrips-erint.
Scrips-isset :
Scrips-issent.
Scrips-erit :
Scrips-erint.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. & Preterimp.
Scrib-ère.

Gerunds.

{ Scrib-endi,
{ Scrib-endo,
{ Scrib-endum.

Preterp. & Preterpl.

Scrips-isse.

Supines.

Scrip-um,
Scrip-u.

Future tense.

Scrip-urum esse,

Participles.

Scrib-ens,
Scrip-urus.

Passive

Passive Voice.

Scrib-or,	{ Scrib-eris,	Scrib-itur :
Scrib-imur,	{ Scrib-ere,	Scrib-untur.
Scrib-ebar,	{ Scrib-imini.	Scrib-ebatur :
Scrib-ebamur,	{ Scrib-ebaris,	Scrib-ebantur.
{ Scrip-tus sum, v.	{ Scrib-ebare,	Script-us est, v.
{ Scrip-tus fui,	{ Scrib-ebamini,	Script-us fuit :
{ Scrip-t-i sumus, v.	{ Scrip-tus es, v.	{ Scrip-t-i sunt,
{ Scrip-t-i fuimus,	{ Scrip-tus fuisti,	{ Scrip-t-i fuerunt,
{ Scrip-tus eram, v.	{ Scrip-t-i estis, v.	{ Scrip-t-i fuere.
{ Scrip-tus fueram,	{ Scrip-t-i fuistis,	Script-us erat,
{ Scrip-t-i eram, v.	{ Scrip-tus eras, v.	Script-us fuerat :
{ Scrip-t-i fueram, v.	{ Scrip-tus fueras,	Script-i erant,
{ Scrip-t-i fueramus,	{ Scrip-t-i eratis,	Script-i fuerant.
Scrib-ar,	{ Scrip-t-i fueratis,	Scrib-etur :
Scrib-emur,	{ Scrib-eris,	Scrib-entur.
Scrib-amur,	{ Scrib-ere,	Scrib-atur,
Scrib-ar,	{ Scrib-imini,	Scrib-itor,
Scrib-amur,	{ Scrib-itor,	Scrib-antur,
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrib-imini,	Scrib-untor,
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrib-iminor,	Scrib-atur,
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrib-aris,	Scrib-antur.
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrib-are,	Scrib-eretur :
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrib-amini,	Scrib-erentur :
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrib-eris,	Script-us sit,
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrib-erere,	Script-us fuerit :
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrib-eremini,	Script-i sint,
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-tus sis,	Script-i fuerint.
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-tus fueris,	Script-us esset
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-t-i sitis,	Script-us fuisset.
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-t-i fueritis,	Script-i essent
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-tus esses,	Script-i fuissent,
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-tus fuisses,	Script-us erit
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-t-i essetis,	Script-us fuerit :
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-t-i fuissetis,	Script-i erunt
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-tus eris,	Script-i fuerint.
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-tus fueris,	{ Scrip-tum iri,
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-t-i eritis,	{ Scrib-endum esse.
Scrib-erur,	{ Scrip-t-i fueritis,	
Scrib-i.	{ Scrip-tum esse,	
Script-us.	{ Scrip-tum fuisse.	
	Scrib-endus,	

An Example of the fourth Conjugation.

Active Voice.

Indicative Mood.

Sepel-io,
Sepel-imus,
Sepel-iebam,
Sepel-iebamus,
Sepel-ivi,
Sepel-ivimus,

Sepel-iveram,
Sepel-iveramus,
Sepel-iam,
Sepel-iemus,

Sepel-is,
Sepel-itis,
Sepel-iebas,
Sepel-iebatis,
Sepel-ivisti,
Sepel-ivistis,

Sepel-iveras,
Sepel-iveratis,
Sepel-ies,
Sepel-ietis,

Sepel-it;
Sepel-iunt,
Sepel-iebat;
Sepel-iebant,
Sepel-ivit;
Sepel-ivērunt,
Sepel-ivēre.
Sepel-iverat;
Sepel-iverant.
Sepel-iet;
Sepel-ient.

Imperative Mood.

Sepel-iamus.

{ Sepel-i,
{ Sepel-ito;
{ Sepel-ire,
{ Sepel-itore;

Sepel-iat,
Sepel-ito;
Sepel-iant,
Sepel-iunto.

Potential Mood.

Sepel-iam,
Sepel-iamus,
Sepel-irem,
Sepel-iremus,
Sepel-iverim,
Sepel-iverimus,
Sepel-ivissem,
Sepel-ivissemus,
Sepel-ivero,
Sepel-iverimus,

Sepel-ias,
Sepel-iatis,
Sepel-ires,
Sepel-iretis,
Sepel-ivēris,
Sepel-ivēritis,
Sepel-ivisses,
Sepel-ivissetis,
Sepel-iveris,
Sepel-iveritis,

Sepel-iat;
Sepel-iant.
Sepel-iret;
Sepel-irent,
Sepel-iverit;
Sepel-iverint,
Sepel-ivisset;
Sepel-ivissent.
Sepel-iverit;
Sepel-iverint,

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. & Preterimp.
Sepel-ire.

Gerunds.
{ Sepel-iendi,
{ Sepel-iendo,
{ Sepel-iendum,

Preterp. & Preterpl.
Sepel-ivisse.
Supines.
{ Sepult-um
{ Sepult-u.

Future tense.
Sepult-urum esse.
Participles.
Sepel-iens,
Sepult-urus.
Passive

Passive Voice.

Sepel ior,	{ Sepel-iris,	Sepel itur :
Sepel-imur,	{ Sepel-ire,	Sepel-iuntur.
Sepel-icbar,	Sepel-imini,	Sepel-icbatur :
	{ Sepel-icbaris,	
Sepel-icbamur,	{ Sepel-icbare,	Sepel-icbantur.
{ Sepult-us sum,	Sepel-icbamini,	Sepult-us est.
{ Sepult-us fui,	Sepult-us es,	Sepult-us fuit :
{ Sepult-i sumus,	Sepult-us fuisti.	{ Sepult-i sunt,
{ Sepult-i fuimus,	Sepult-i estis,	{ Sepult-i fuêrunt,
	Sepult-i fuistis,	Sepult-i fuêre.
{ Sepult-us eram,	Sepult-us eras,	Sepult-us erat,
{ Sepult-us fueram,	Sepult-us fueras,	Sepult-us fuerat :
{ Sepult-i eramus,	Sepult-i eratis,	Sepult-i erant.
{ Sepult-i fueramus,	Sepult-i fueratis,	Sepult-i fuerant.
Sepel-iar,	{ Sepel-ieris,	Sepel-ietur :
	{ Sepel-iere,	
Sepel-iemur,	Sepel-iemini.	Sepel-ientur.
	{ Sepel-ire,	Sepel-iatur,
Sepel-iamur,	{ Sepel-itor,	Sepel-itor ;
	{ Sepel-imini,	Sepel-iantur,
Sepel-iar,	{ Sepel iminor,	Sepel-iun'or.
	Sepel-iaris,	Sepel-iatur,
Sepel iamur,	Sepel-iare,	
Sepel-irer,	Sepel-iamini,	Sepel-iantur.
	Sepel-ireris,	Sepel-iretur :
	Sepel-irere,	
Sepel-iremur,	Sepel-iremini,	Sepel-irentur.
{ Sepult-us sim,	Sepult-us sis,	Sepult-us sit,
{ Sepult-us fuerim,	Sepult-us fueris,	Sepult-us fuerit ;
{ Sepult-i simus,	Sepult-i fisis,	Sepult-i sint,
{ Sepult-i fuerimus,	Sepult-i fueritis,	Sepult-i fuerint,
{ Sepult-us essem,	Sepult-us esses,	Sepult-us esset,
{ Sepult-us fuisset,	Sepult-us fuisses,	Sepult-us fuisset.
{ Sepult-i essemus,	Sepult-i essetis,	Sepult-i essent,
{ Sepult-i fuissetus,	Sepult-i fuissetis,	Sepult-i fuissent.
{ Sepult-us ero,	Sepult-us eris,	Sepult-us erit,
{ Sepult-us fuero,	Sepult-us fueris,	Sepult-us fuerit :
{ Sepult-i erimus,	Sepult-i eritis,	Sepult-i erunt,
{ Sepult-i fuerimus,	Sepult-i fueritis,	Sepult-i fuerint,
Sepel-iri.	{ Sepult-um esse,	{ Sepult-um iri,
	{ Sepult-um fuisset.}	{ Sepel iendum esse.
Sepult-us.	Sepel iendus.	

The manner of writing a Verb with English and Latine.

An Example of the first Conjugation, Active voice.

Indicative Mood, Present tense.

<i>I call, or</i> <i>I do call,</i> Voc-o, <i>We call, or</i> <i>we do call,</i> Voc-amus,	<i>Thou callest, or</i> <i>thou dost call,</i> Voc-as, <i>Ye call, or</i> <i>ye do call,</i> Voc-atis,	<i>He calleth, or</i> <i>he doth call,</i> Voc-at: <i>They call, or</i> <i>they do call:</i> Voc-ant.
---	---	--

Preterimperfect tense.

<i>I called, or</i> <i>I did call,</i> Voc-abam, <i>We called, or</i> <i>we did call,</i> Voc-abamus,	<i>Thou calledst, or</i> <i>thou didst call,</i> Voc-abas, <i>Ye called, or</i> <i>ye did call,</i> Voc-abatis,	- called, or did call, Voc-abat: - called, or did call. Voc-abant.
--	--	---

Preterperfect tense.

<i>I have called,</i> Voc-avi, <i>We have called,</i> Voc-avimus,	<i>Thou hast called,</i> Voc-avisti, <i>Ye have called,</i> Voc-avistis,	- hath called, Voc-avit: - have called, { Voc-averunt, { Voc-avère.
--	---	---

Preterpluperfect tense.

<i>I had called,</i> Voc-averam, <i>We had called,</i> Voc-averamus,	<i>Thou hadst called,</i> Voc-averas, <i>Ye had called,</i> Voc-averatis,	- had called, Voc-averat: - had called, Voc-averant.
---	--	---

Future tense.

<i>I shall call, or</i> <i>I will call,</i> Voc-abo, <i>We shall call, or we</i> <i>will call,</i> Voc-abimus,	<i>Thou shalt call, or</i> <i>thou wilt call,</i> Voc-abis, <i>Ye shall call, or ye</i> <i>will call,</i> Voc-abitis,	- shall call, or will call, Voc-abit, <i>Shall call, or will</i> <i>call,</i> Voc-abunt.
---	--	---

Imperative Mood, Present tense,

<i>Call we, or</i> <i>Let us call,</i> Voc-emus,	<i>Call thou, or do thou</i> <i>call,</i> Voc-a, Voc-ato, <i>Call ye,</i> Voc-ate, Voc-atote,	<i>Call he or</i> <i>Let him call,</i> Voc-et, Voc-ato; <i>Call they, or</i> <i>Let them call,</i> Voc-ent, Voc-anto.
--	---	--

F

Poten-

Potential Mood, Present tense.

I may call,
Voc-em,
We may call,
Voc-emus,

Thou mayest call,
Voc-es,
Ye may call,
Voc-etis,

He may call,
Vocet:
They may call,
Voc-ent.

Preterimperfect tense.

I might call,
Voc-arem,
We might call,
Voc-aremus,

Thou mightest call,
Voc-ares,
Ye might call,
Voc-aretis,

-- might call,
Voc-aret:
-- might call,
Voc-arent.

Preterperfect tense.

I might have called,

Voc averim,
We might have called,
Vocaverimus,

Thou mightest have called,
Voc-averis,
Ye might have called,
Vocaveritis,

-- might have called,

Voc-averit:
-- might have called,
Voc-averint.

Preterpluperfect tense.

I might have had called,
Voc-avissim,
We might have had called,
Voc avissimus,

Thou mightest have had called,
Voc-avisses,
Ye might have had called,
Voc-avissetis,

-- might have had called,
Voc-avisset:
-- might have had called,
Voc-avissent.

Future tense.

*I may call here-
after.*
Voc-avero.
We may call hereafter,
Voc-averimus,

*Thou mayest call here-
after,*
Voc-averis,
Ye may call hereafter,
Voc-averitis,

*-- may call here-
after,*
Voc-averit:
-- may call hereafter,
Voc-averint.

Infinitive Mood.

Pres. and Preterim.

{ *To call,*
{ Voc-are.
{ Gerund in, di,
{ *Of calling, or of*
{ *being called,*
{ Voc-andi.
{ Supine, um.
{ *To call,*
{ Voc-atum,

Particip. Fut. in, rus

To call, ready to call, about to call, Voc-aturus,

Preterp. & Preterplu.

{ *To have, or*
{ *had called,*
{ Voc-avisse,
{ Gerund in, do.
{ *In calling, or in*
{ *being called,*
{ Voc-ando.
{ Supine, u.
{ *To be called,*
{ Voc-atu.

Future tense.

{ *To call hereafter,*
{ Voc-aturum esse.
{ Gerund in, dum.
{ *To call, or to be*
{ *called,*
{ Voc-andum.
{ Particip. Pres.
{ *Calling,*
{ Voc-ans,

First Conjugation, Passive voice.

Indicat. Mood, Present tense.

I am called,
Voc or,

Thou art called,
{ Voc-aris
Voc are,

He is called,
Voc-atur,

We are called,
Voc-amur,

Ye are called,
Voc-amini,

They are called,
Voc-antur.

Preterimperfect tense.

I was called,
Voc-abar,

Thou wast called,
{ Voc-abaris,
Voc-abare,

-- was called,
Voc-abatur:

We were called,
Voc-abamur,

Ye were called,
Voc-abamini,

-- were called,
Voc-abantur.

Preterperfect tense.

I have been called,
{ Voc-atus sum,
Voc-atus fui,
We have been called,
{ Voc-ati sumus,
Voc-ati fuimus,

Thou hast been called,
{ Voc-atus es,
Voc-atus fuisti,
Ye have been called,
{ Voc-ati estis,
Voc-ati fuistis,

-- hath been called,
{ Voc-atus est,
Voc-atus fuit:
-- have been called,
{ Voc-ati sunt,
Voc-ati fuerunt,
Voc-ati fuere.

Preterpluperfect tense.

I had been called,
{ Voc-atus eram,
Voc-atus fueram,
We had been called,
{ Voc-ati eramus,
Voc-ati fueramus,

Thou hadst been called,
{ Voc-atus eras,
Voc-atus fueras,
Ye had been called,
{ Voc-ati eratis,
Voc-ati fueratis,

-- had been called,
{ Voc-atus erat,
Voc-atus fuerat,
-- had been called,
{ Vocati erant,
Voc-ati fuerant.

Future tense.

*I shall, or will be
called,*
Voc-abor,
*We shall, or will be
called,*
Voc-abimur,

*Thou shalt, or wilt be
called,*
{ Voc-aberis,
Voc-abere,
*Ye shall or will be
called,*
Voc-abimini,

*- shall, or will be
called,*
Voc-abitur,
*-- Shall or will be
called,*
Voc-abuntur,

Imperative Mood, Present tense.

Be thou called,

*Be he called, or
Let him be called,*

*Be we called, or let
us be called,*

{ Voc-are,
Voc-ator,
Be ye called,

{ Voc-etur,
Voc-ator:
*Be they called, or
let them be called,*

Voc-emur,

{ Voc-amini,
Voc-aminor,

{ Voc-entur,
Voc-antor.

Potential Mood, Present tense.

<i>I may be called,</i> Voc-er,	<i>Thou mayest be called</i> { Voc-eris Voc-ere,	<i>- may be called</i> Voc-etur,
<i>We may be called</i> Voc-emur,	<i>Ye may be called</i> Voc-emi,	<i>- may be called</i> Voc-entur,
<i>I might be called</i> Voc-arer,	Preterimperfect tense. <i>Thou mightest be called</i> { Voc-areris Voc-arere,	<i>- might be called</i> Voc-aretur,
<i>We might be called</i> Voc-aremur,	<i>Ye might be called</i> Voc-aremini,	<i>- might be called</i> Voc-arentur,
<i>I might have been called</i> { Voc-atus sis Voc-atus fuerim, <i>We might have been called</i> { Voc-ati simus Voc-ati fuerimus,	Preterperfect tense. <i>Thou mightest have been called</i> { Voc-atus sis Voc-atus fueris, <i>Ye might have been called</i> { Voc-ati sitis Voc-ati fueritis,	<i>- might have been called</i> { Vocatus sit Voc-atus fuerit, <i>- might have been called</i> { Voc-ati sint Voc-ati fuerint,
<i>I might have had been called</i> { Voc-atus essem Voc-atus fuissem, <i>We might have had been called</i> { Voc-ati essemus Voc-ati fuissemus,	Preterpluperfect tense. <i>Thou mightest have had been called</i> { Voc-atus essem Voc-atus fuisses, <i>Ye might have had been called</i> { Voc-ati essetis Voc-ati fuissetis,	<i>- might have had been called</i> { Voc-atus esset Voc-atus fuisset, <i>- might have had been called</i> { Voc-ati essent Voc-ati fuissent,
<i>I may be called hereafter</i> { Voc-atus ero Voc-atus fuero, <i>We may be called hereafter</i> { Voc-ati erimus Voc-ati fuerimus,	<i>Thou mayest be called hereafter</i> { Voc-atus eris, Voc-atus fueris, <i>Ye may be called hereafter</i> { Voc-ati eritis Vocati fueritis,	<i>- may be called hereafter</i> { Voc-atus erit Voc-atus fuerit, <i>- may be called hereafter</i> { Voc-ati erunt, Voc-ati fuerint,
{ Pres. & Preterimp. To be called Voc-ari. { Partic. Preter. Called Voc-atus,	{ Preterp & Preterpl. To have or had been called { Voc-atum esse Voc-atum fuisse } { Partic. Fut. dnr. To be called Voc-andus	{ Future tense. To be called hereafter Voc-atum iri Voc-andum esse }

An Example of the second Conjugation. Active voice.

Indicative Mood, Present tense.

<i>I bold, or I do bold</i>	<i>Thou boldest, or thou dost bold</i>	<i>He holdeth, or he doth bold</i>
Ten-eo,	Ten-es,	Ten-et,
<i>We hold, or do bold</i>	<i>Ye hold or ye do bold</i>	<i>They hold, or they do hold</i>
Ten-emus,	Ten-eris,	Ten-ent.

Preterimperfect tense.

<i>I beld, or I did bold</i>	<i>Thou beldest, or thou didst bold</i>	<i>- beld, or did bold</i>
Ten-ebam,	Ten-ebas,	Ten-ebat,
<i>We beld, or did bold</i>	<i>Ye beld, or did bold</i>	<i>- beld, or did bold</i>
Ten-ebamus,	Ten-ebatis,	Ten-ebant.

Preterperfect tense.

<i>I have beld</i>	<i>Thou hast beld</i>	<i>- hath beld</i>
Ten-ui,	Ten-uisti,	Ten-uit,
<i>We have beld</i>	<i>Ye have beld</i>	<i>- have beld</i>
Ten-uimus,	Ten-uistis,	{ Ten-uêrunt,
		{ Ten-uêre.

Preterpluperfect tense.

<i>I had beld</i>	<i>Thou hadst beld</i>	<i>- had beld</i>
Ten-ueram,	Ten-ueras,	Ten-uerat,
<i>We had beld</i>	<i>Ye had beld</i>	<i>- had beld</i>
Ten-ueramus,	Ten-ueratis,	Ten-uerant.

Future tense.

<i>I shall bold, or, I will bold</i>	<i>Thou shalt, or thou wilt bold</i>	<i>- shall bold, or will bold</i>
Ten-ebo,	Ten-ebis,	Ten-ebit,
<i>We shall or we will bold</i>	<i>Ye shall, or ye will bold</i>	<i>- shall or will bold</i>
Ten-ebimus,	Ten-ebitis,	Ten-ebunt.

Imperative Mood, Present tense.

<i>Hold thou, or do thou bold</i>	<i>Hold he, or Let him bold</i>
{ Ten-e	{ Ten-eat
{ Ten-eto,	{ Ten-ero,
<i>Hold ye</i>	<i>Hold they, or Let them bold,</i>
{ Ten-ere	{ Ten-eant
{ Ten-etore,	{ Ten-ento.
<i>Hold we, or Let us bold</i>	
Ten-eamus,	

Potential Mood, Present tense.

I may hold,
Ten-eam,
We may hold
Ten-eamus,

Thou mayst hold
Ten-eas,
Ye may hold
Ten-eatis,

-may hold
Ten-eat,
-may hold
Ten-eant.

Preterimperfect tense.

I might hold
Ten-erem,
We might hold
Ten-eremus,

Toou mightest hold
Ten-eres,
Ye might hold
Ten-eretis,

-might hold
Ten-eret,
-might hold
Ten-erent.

Preterperfect tense.

I might have held
Ten-uerim,
We might have held
Ten-uerimus,

Thou mightest
have held
Ten-ueris,
Ye might have held
Ten-ueritis,

-might have held
Ten-uerit,
-might have held
Ten-uerint.

Preterpluperfect tense.

I might have
had held
Ten-uissim,
We might have had held
Ten-uissimus,

Thou mightest have
had held
Ten-uisses,
Ye might have had held
Ten-uissetis,

-might have
had held
Ten-uisset,
-might have had held
Ten-uissent.

Future tense.

I may hold
hereafter
Ten-uerō,
We may hold hereafter
Ten-uerimus

Toou mayest hold
hereafter
Ten-ueris,
Ye may hold hereafter
Ten-ueritis,

-may hold
hereafter
Ten-uerit,
-may hold hereafter
Ten-uerint.

Infinitive Mood.

{ Pres. & Preterimp.
 { To hold
 { Ten-ere.
 { Gerund in Di
 { Of holding, or of
 { being held
 { Ten-endi,
 { Supine um,
 { To hold,
 { Tent-um,

{ Preterp. & Preterpl.
 { To have, or had held
 { Ten-uisse.
 { Gerund in Do
 { In holding, or In
 { being held
 { Ten-endo,
 { Supine u.
 { To be held.
 { Tent-u,

{ Future tense.
 { To hold hereafter
 { Tent-urum esse.
 { Gerund in Dum
 { To hold, or
 { to be held
 { Ten-endum.
 { Partic. Pres.
 { Holding
 { Ten-ens.

Particip. Fut. in, *rus*,
 To hold, about to hold, ready to hold, Tent-urus.

Second Conjugation, Passive voice.

Indicative Mood, Present tense.

I am held
Ten-*tor*,*We are held*
Ten-*emur*,*Thou art held*
{ Ten-*eris*,
 Ten-*ere*,
Ye are held
 Ten-*emini*,*He is held*
Ten-*etur*,*They are held*
Ten-*entur*.

Preterimperfect tense.

I was held
Ten-*ebar*,*We were held*
Ten-*ebamur*,*Thou wast held*
{ Ten-*ebaris*,
 Ten-*ebare*,
Ye were held
 Ten-*ebamini*,*- was held*
Ten-*ebatur*,*- were held*
Ten-*ebantur*,

Preterperfect tense.

I have been held,
{ Tent-*us sum*
 Tent-*us fui*,
we have been held,
{ Tent-*i fuimus*
 Tent-*sumus*,*Thou hast been held*
{ Tent-*us es*
 Tent-*us fuisti*,
Ye have been held
{ Tent-*i estis*,
 Tent-*i fuistis*,*- hath been held*
{ Tent-*us est*
 Tent-*us fuit*,
- have been held
{ Tent-*i sunt*
 Tenti *fuērunt*
 Tent-*i fuēre*.

Preterpluperfect tense.

I had been held
{ Tent-*us eram*,
 Tent-*us fueram*,
we had been held,
{ Tent-*i eramus*,
 Tent-*i fueramus*,*Thou hadst been held*
{ Tent-*us eras*,
 Tent-*us fueras*,
Ye had been held
{ Tent-*i eratis*,
 Tent-*i fueratis*,*- had been held*
{ Tent-*us erat*,
 Tent-*us fuerat* :
- had been held
{ Tent-*i erant*,
 Tent-*i fuerant*.

Future tense.

*I shall or will be held*Ten-*ebor*,*We shall or will be held*
Ten-*ebimur*,*Thou shalt or wilt be held*
{ Ten-*eberis*,
 Ten-*ebere*,
Ye shall or will be held
 Ten-*ebimini*,*- shall or will be held*Ten-*ebitur*,*- shall or will be held*
Ten-*ebuntur*.

Imperative Mood, Present tense.

*Be thou held**Be we held*, or
*Let us be held*Ten-*eamur*,{ Ten-*ere*,
 Ten-*etor*,
Be ye held{ Ten-*emini*,
 Ten-*eminor*,*Be he held*, or
Let him be held{ Ten-*eatur*
 Ten-*etor*,
Be they held, or
Let them be held{ Ten-*eantur*
 Ten-*entor*.

Potential Mood, Present tense.

I may be held
Ten-eat,

Thou mayest be held

- *may be held*
Ten-eatur :

We may be held
Ten-eamur,

Ye may be held
Ten-eamini,

- *may be held*
Ten-eantur.

Preterimperfect tense.

I might be held
Ten-erer,

Thou mightest be held

- *might be held*
Ten-eretur,

We might be held
Ten-eremur,

Ye might be held
Ten-eremini,

- *might be held*
Ten-erentur.

Preterperfect tense.

I might have been held

Thou mightest have been held

- *might have been held*

{ Tent-us sim
{ Tent-us fuerim,
We might have been held

{ Tent-us sis
{ Tent-us fueris,
Ye might have been held

{ Tent-us sit
{ Tent-us fuerit,
- *might have been held*

{ Tent-i simus
{ Tent-i fuerimus,

{ Tent-i sitis
{ Tent-i fueritis,

{ Tent-i sint
{ Tent-i fuerint.

Preterpluperfect tense.

I might have had been held

Thou mightest have had been held

- *might have had been held*

{ Tent-us essem
{ Tent-us fuisset,
We might have had been held

{ Tent-us esses
{ Tent-us fuisset,
Ye might have had been held

{ Tent-us esset
{ Tent-us fuisset,
- *might have had been held*

{ Tent-i essemus
{ Tent-i fuissetus,

{ Tent-i essetis
{ Tent-i fuissetis

{ Tent-i essent
{ Tent-i fuissent.

Future tense.

I may be held hereafter.

Thou mayest be held hereafter

- *may be held hereafter*

{ Tent-us ero
{ Tent-us fuero,
We may be held hereafter

{ Tent-us eris
{ Tent-us fueris,
Ye may be held hereafter

{ Tent-us erit
{ Tent-us fuerit,
- *may be held hereafter*

{ Tent-i erimus
{ Tent-i fuerimus,

{ Tent-i eritis
{ Tent-i fueritis,

{ Tent-i erunt
{ Tent-i fuerint.

Infinitive Mood.

{ Pres. & Preterim.
To be held
{ Ten-eri.
{ Partic. Pres.
Held
{ Tent-us.

{ Preterp. & Preterpl.
To have or had been held.
{ Tent-um esse
Tent-um fuisse. }
{ Partic. Fut. dur.
To be held
Ten-endus.

{ Future tense
To be held hereafter
{ Tent-um iri,
Ten-endum esse.

An Example of the third Conjugation. Active voice.

Indicative Mood, Present tense.

<i>I write, or</i> <i>I do write</i> Scrib-o,	<i>Thou writest, or</i> <i>thou dost write</i> Scrib-is,	<i>He writeth, or</i> <i>he doth write</i> Scrib-it,
<i>We write, or</i> <i>we do write</i> Scrib-imus,	<i>Ye write, or</i> <i>ye do write</i> Scrib-itis,	<i>They write, or</i> <i>they do write.</i> Scrib-unt.

Preterimperfect tense.

<i>I wrote, or</i> <i>I did write</i> Scrib-ebam,	<i>Thou wrotest, or</i> <i>thou didst write</i> Scrib-ebas,	- wrote, or did write
<i>We wrote, or</i> <i>we did write</i> Scrib-ebamus,	<i>Ye wrote, or</i> <i>ye did write</i> Scrib-ebatis,	- wrote, or did write
		Scrib-ebant.

Preterperfect tense.

<i>I have written</i> Scrip-ti,	<i>Thou hast written</i> Scrip-isti,	- hath written
<i>We have written</i> Scrip-timus,	<i>Ye have written</i> Scrip-istis,	- have written
		{ Scrip-erunt
		{ Scrip-ere.

Preterpluperfect tense.

<i>I had written</i> Scrip-eram,	<i>Thou hadst written</i> Scrip-eras,	- had written
<i>We had written</i> Scrip-eramus,	<i>Ye had written</i> Scrip-eratis,	- had written
		Scrip-erant.

Future tense.

{ <i>I shall write, or</i> <i>I will write</i> Scrib-am,	<i>Thou shalt write, or</i> <i>thou wilt write</i> Scrib-es,	- shall write, or will write
{ <i>We shall write,</i> <i>we will write</i> Scrib-emus	{ <i>Ye shall write,</i> <i>ye will write</i> Scrib-etis,	- shall write, or will write
		Scrib-ent.

Imperative Mood, Present tense.

	<i>Write thou, or</i> <i>do thou write</i>	<i>Write he, or</i> <i>Let him write</i>
	{ Scrib-e,	{ Scrib-at
	{ Scrib-ito,	{ Scrib-ito,
<i>Write we, or</i> <i>Let us write</i> Scrib-amus,	<i>Write ye</i>	<i>Write they, or</i> <i>Let them write</i>
	{ Scrib-ite	{ Scrib-ant
	{ Scrib-ixote,	{ Scrib-unto.

Potential

Potential Mood, Present tense.

<i>I may write</i>	<i>Thou mayest write</i>	<i>- may write</i>
<i>Scrib-am,</i>	<i>Scrib-as,</i>	<i>Scrib-at,</i>
<i>We may write</i>	<i>ye may write</i>	<i>- may write</i>
<i>Scrib-amus,</i>	<i>Scrib-atis,</i>	<i>Scrib-ant.</i>

Preterimperfect tense.

<i>I might write</i>	<i>Thou mightest write</i>	<i>- might write</i>
<i>Scrib-erem,</i>	<i>Scrib-eres,</i>	<i>Scrib-eret,</i>
<i>We might write</i>	<i>Te might write</i>	<i>- might write</i>
<i>Scrib-eremus,</i>	<i>Scrib-eretis,</i>	<i>Scrib-erent.</i>

Preterperfect tense.

<i>I might have written</i>	<i>Thou mightest have written</i>	<i>- might have written</i>
<i>Scrip-erim,</i>	<i>Scrip-eris,</i>	<i>Scrip-erit,</i>
<i>We might have written</i>	<i>Te might have written</i>	<i>- might have written</i>
<i>Scrip-erimus,</i>	<i>Scrip-eritis,</i>	<i>Scrip-erint.</i>

Preterpluperfect tense.

<i>I might have had written</i>	<i>Thou mightest have had written</i>	<i>- might have had written</i>
<i>Scrip-issem,</i>	<i>Scrip-isses,</i>	<i>Scrip-isset,</i>
<i>We might have had written</i>	<i>- Te might have had written</i>	<i>- might have had written</i>
<i>Scrip-issemus.</i>	<i>Scrip-issetis.</i>	<i>Scrip-issent.</i>

Future tense.

<i>I may write hereafter</i>	<i>Thou mayest write hereafter</i>	<i>- may write hereafter</i>
<i>Scrip-ero,</i>	<i>Scrip-eris.</i>	<i>Scrip-erit.</i>
<i>We may write hereafter</i>	<i>Te may write hereafter</i>	<i>- may write hereafter</i>
<i>Scrip-erimus,</i>	<i>Scrip-eritis,</i>	<i>Scrip-erint.</i>

Infinitive Mood.

<i>{ Pref. & Preterimp.</i>	<i>{ Preterp. & Preterpl.</i>	<i>{ Future tense.</i>
<i>{ To write</i>	<i>{ To have or had written</i>	<i>{ To write hereafter</i>
<i>{ Scrib-ere.</i>	<i>{ Scrip-isse.</i>	<i>{ Scrip-urum esse.</i>
<i>{ Gerund in Di,</i>	<i>{ Gerund in Do,</i>	<i>{ Gerund in Dum.</i>
<i>{ Of writing, or of being written</i>	<i>{ In writing, or in being written</i>	<i>{ To write, or to be written.</i>
<i>{ Scrib-endi,</i>	<i>{ Scrib-endo,</i>	<i>{ Scrib-endum.</i>
<i>{ Supine in um.</i>	<i>{ Supine in u.</i>	<i>{ Particip. pres.</i>
<i>{ To write,</i>	<i>{ To be written</i>	<i>{ Writing</i>
<i>{ Scrip-um.</i>	<i>{ Scrip-u.</i>	<i>{ Scrib-ens</i>
<i>{ Partic. fut. in, rus.</i>		
<i>{ To write, ready to write; about to write; Scrip-urus.</i>		

Third Conjugation, Passive voice.

Indicative Mood, Present tense.

I am written,
Scrib-or,*Thou art written*{ Scrib-eris
{ Scrib-ere,*He is written*
Scrib-i-ur,*We are written*
Scrib-imur,*Ye are written*
Scrib-imini,*They are written*
Scrib-untur.

Preterimperfect tense.

I was written
Scrib-ebar*Thou wast written*{ Scrib-ebaris
{ Scrib-ebare,*- was written*
Scrib-ebatur.*We were written*
Scrib-ebamur,*Ye were written*
Scrib-ebamini,*- were written*
Scrib-ebantur

Preterperfect tense.

I have been written{ Script-us sum,
{ Script-us fui,*Thou hast been written*{ Script-us es,
{ Script-us fuisti,*- hath been written,*Script-us est,
Script-us fuit,*We have been written*{ Script-i fumus,
{ Script-i fuimus,*Ye have been written*{ Script-i estis
{ Script-i fuistis,*- have been written*{ Script-i sunt,
{ Script-i fuerunt,
Script-i fuerē.

Preterpluperfect tense.

I had been written{ Script-us eram,
{ Script-us fueram,*Thou hadst been written*{ Script-us eras,
{ Script-us fueras,*- had been written*Script-us erat,
Script-us fuerat,*We had been written*{ Script-i eramus,
{ Script-i fueramus,*Ye had been written*{ Script-i eratis
{ Script-i fueratis.{ Script-i erant,
{ Script-i fuerant.

Future tense.

I shall
or } be written*I will* }
Scrib-ar.*Thou shalt*
or } be written{ Scrib-eris,
{ Scrib-ere,*- shall or will be*
written

Scrib-etur,

We shall or will be
written

Scrib-emur,

Ye shall or will be
written

Scrib-emi-

- shall, or will be
written

Scrib-entur.

Imperative Mood, Present tense.

Be thou written{ Scrib-ere,
{ Scrib-itor,
Be ye written
{ Scrib-imini,
{ Scrib-iminor,*Be he written, or**Let him be written,*{ Scrib-atur,
{ Scrib-itor,{ *Be we written, or*
Let us be written

Scrib-amur,

{ *Be they written, or*
Let them be written{ Scrib-antur,
{ Scrib-untor.

Potential

Potential Mood, Present tense.

Infinit. Mood.	<i>I may be written</i>	<i>Thou mayest be written</i>	<i>- may be written</i>
	Scrib-ar,	{ Scrib-aris	Scrib-atur,
	<i>We may be written</i>	{ Scrib-are,	<i>- may be written</i>
	Scrib-amur,	<i>Te may be written</i>	Scrib-antur.
	<i>I might be written</i>	Scrib-amini,	<i>- might be written</i>
	Scrib-eris,	Preterimperfect tense.	Scrib-eretur,
	<i>We might be written</i>	<i>Thou mightest be writ-</i>	<i>- might be written</i>
	Scrib-eremur,	<i>ten</i>	Scrib-erentur.
	<i>I might have been</i>	{ Scrib-eretur,	<i>- might have been</i>
	<i>written</i>	{ Scrib-erere,	<i>written</i>
	{ Script-us sim,	<i>Te might be written</i>	{ Script-us sit,
	{ Script-us fuerim,	Scrib-eremini,	{ Scriptus fuerit,
	<i>We might have been</i>	Preterperfect tense.	<i>- might have been</i>
	<i>written</i>	<i>Thou mightest have</i>	<i>written</i>
	{ Script-i simus,	<i>been written</i>	{ Script-i sint,
	{ Script-i fuerimus, }	{ Script-us sis	{ Script-i fuerint.
	<i>I might had been</i>	{ Script-us fueris,	<i>- might had been</i>
	<i>written</i>	<i>Te might have been</i>	<i>written</i>
	{ Script-us essem,	<i>written</i>	{ Script-i finit,
	{ Script us fuisset,	{ Script-i fueritis,	{ Script-i fuerint.
	<i>We might had been</i>	Preterpluperfect tense.	<i>- might had been</i>
	<i>written</i>	<i>Thou mightest had</i>	<i>written</i>
	{ Script-i essemus	<i>been written</i>	{ Script-us esset ;
	{ Script-i fuissetus	{ Script-us esses,	{ Script-us fuisset,
	<i>I may be written</i>	<i>Te might had been</i>	<i>- might had been</i>
	<i>hereafter</i>	<i>written</i>	<i>written</i>
	{ Script-us ero	{ Script-i esseris	{ Script-i essent
	{ Script-us fuero,	{ Script-i fuissetis,	{ Script-i fuissent.
	<i>We may be written</i>	Future tense.	<i>- may be written</i>
	<i>hereafter.</i>	<i>Thou mayest be writ-</i>	<i>hereafter</i>
	{ Script-i erimus	<i>ten hereafter</i>	{ Script us erit
	{ Script-i fuerimus	{ Script- us eris	{ Script-us fuerit,
	<i>I might be written</i>	{ Script-us fueris,	<i>- may be written</i>
	<i>hereafter</i>	<i>Te may be written</i>	<i>hereafter</i>
	{ Script-i eritis	<i>hereafter</i>	{ Script-i erunt
	{ Script-i fueritis,	{ Script-i eritis	{ Script-i fuerint.
	<i>I might be written</i>	{ Script-i fueritis,	<i>- might be written</i>
	<i>hereafter</i>	Preterp. & Preterpl.	<i>hereafter</i>
	{ Pref. & Preterimp	<i>To have or had been</i>	{ Future tense.
	<i>To be written</i>	<i>written</i>	<i>To be written here-</i>
	{ Scrib-i,	{ Script-um esse	<i>after</i>
	{ Partic. Pret.	{ Script-um fuisse.	{ Script-um iri }
	<i>Written</i>	{ Partic. fut. in Div.	{ Scribendum esse. }
	{ Script-us,	<i>To be written</i>	
		{ Scrib-endus,	

An Example of the fourth Conjugation. Active voice.

Indicative Mood, Present tense.

<i>I bury, or</i> <i>I do bury</i> Sepel-io,	<i>Thou buryest, or</i> <i>thou dost bury</i> Sepel-is,	<i>He buryeth, or</i> <i>he doth bury</i> Sepel-it,
<i>We bury, or</i> <i>we do bury</i> Sepel-imus,	<i>Ye bury, or</i> <i>ye do bury</i> Sepel-itis,	<i>They bury, or</i> <i>they do bury</i> Sepeli-unt.

Preterimperfect tense.

<i>I buried, or</i> <i>I did bury</i> Sepel-iebam,	<i>Thou buriedst, or</i> <i>thou didst bury</i> Sepel-iebas,	- buried, or - did bury Sepel-iebat,
<i>We buried, or</i> <i>we did bury</i> Sepel-iebamus,	<i>Ye buried, or</i> <i>Ye did bury</i> Sepel-iebatis,	- buried, or - did bury Sepel-iebant.

Preterperfect tense.

<i>I have buried</i> Sepel-ivi,	<i>Thou hast buried</i> Sepel-ivisti,	- hath buried Sepel-ivit,
<i>We have buried</i> Sepel-ivimus,	<i>Ye have buried</i> Sepel-ivistis,	- have buried { Sepel-ivērunt, { Sepel-ivère.

Preterpluperfect tense.

<i>I had buried</i> Sepel-iveram,	<i>Thou hadst buried</i> Sepel-iveras,	- had buried Sepel-iverat,
<i>We had buried</i> Sepel-iveramus,	<i>Ye had buried</i> Sepel-iveratis,	- had buried Sepel-iverant.

Future tense.

<i>I shall bury, or</i> <i>I will bury</i> Sepel-iam,	<i>Thou shalt bury, or</i> <i>thou wilt bury</i> Sepel-ies,	- shall bury, or - will bury Sepel-iet,
<i>We shall bury, or</i> <i>we will bury</i> Sepel-iemus,	<i>Ye shall bury, or</i> <i>ye will bury</i> Sepel-ietis,	- shall bury, or - will bury Sepel-ient.

Imperative Mood, Present tense.

	<i>Bury thou, or</i> <i>do thou bury</i> { Sepel-i, { Sepel-ito,	<i>Bury he, or</i> <i>Let him bury</i> { Sepel-iat, { Sepel-ito,
<i>Bury we, or</i> <i>Let us bury</i> Sepel-iamus,	<i>Bury ye</i> { Sepel-ite, { Sepel-itoare,	<i>Bury they, or</i> <i>Let them bury</i> { Sepel-iant, { Sepel-iunto.

Potential

Potential Mood, Present tense.

I may bury
Sepel-iam,
We may bury
Sepel-iamus,

Thou mayest bury
Sepel-ias,
Ye may bury
Sepel iatis,

- *may bury*
Sepel-iat,
- *may bury*
Sepel-iant.

Preterimperfect tense.

I might bury
Sepel-irem,
We might bury
Sepel-iremus,

Thou mightest bury
Sepel-ires,
Ye might bury
Sepel-iretis,

- *might bury*
Sepel-iret,
- *might bury*
Sepel-irent.

Preterperfect tense.

I might have buried,
Sepel-iverim,
We might have buried
Sepel-iverimus,

Thou mightest have buried
Sepel-iveris,
Ye might have buried
Sepel-iveritis,

- *might have buried*
Sepel-iverit,
- *might have buried*
Sepel-iverint.

Preterpluperfect tense.

I might have had buried
Sepel-ivissem,
We might have had buried
Sepel-ivissemus,

Thou mightest have had buried
Sepel-ivisses,
Ye might have had buried
Sepel-ivissetis,

- *might have had buried*
Sepel-ivisset,
- *might have had buried*
Sepel-ivissent.

Future tense.

I may bury hereafter
Sepel-ivero,
We may bury hereafter
Sepel-iverimus,

Thou mayest bury hereafter
Sepel-iveris,
Ye may bury hereafter
Sepel-iveritis,

- *may bury hereafter*
Sepel-iverit,
- *may bury hereafter*
Sepel-iverint.

Infinitive Mood.

{ Pres. & Preterimp.
To bury
Sepel-ire.

{ Preterp. & Preterpl.
To have or had buried

{ Future tense.
To bury hereafter

{ Gerund in Di,
Of Burying, or of being buried.

{ Gerund in Do,
In burying, or in being buried.

{ Sepult-urum esse.
Gerund in Dum.

{ Sepel-iendi.

{ Sepel-iendo.

{ To bury, or to be buried

{ First Supine

{ Latter Supine

{ Sepel-iendum.

{ To bury

{ To be buried

{ Partic. Pres.

{ Sepult-um.

{ Sepult-u.

{ Burying
Sepel-iens.

Partic. fut. in rus,

To bury; ready to bury, about to bury, Sepult-urus.

Fourth Conjugation, Passive voice.

Indicative Mood, Present tense.

I am buried
Sepel-ior,*Thou art buried*
{ Sepel-iris,
{ Sepel-ire,*He is buried*
Sepel-itur,*We are buried*
Sepel-imur,*Ye are buried*
Sepel-imini,*They are buried*
Sepel-iuntur.*I was buried*
Sepel-iebar,

Preterimperfect tense.

Thou wast buried
{ Sepel-iebaris,
{ Sepel-iebare,*- was buried*
Sepel-iebatur,*We were buried*
Sepel-iebamur,*- Ye were buried*
Sepel-iebamini,*- were buried*
Sepel-iebantur.

Preterperfect tense.

I have been buried
{ Sepult-us sum,
{ Sepult-us fui,
We have been buried
{ Sepult-i sumus,
{ Sepult-i fuimus,*Thou hast been buried*
{ Sepult-us es,
{ Sepult-us fuisti,
Ye have been buried
{ Sepult-i estis,
{ Sepult-i fuistis,*- hath been buried*
{ Sepult-us est,
{ Sepult-us fuit,
- have been buried
{ Sepult-i sunt,
{ Sepult-i fuerunt,
{ Sepult-i fuere.

Preterpluperfect tense.

I had been buried
{ Sepult-us eram,
{ Sepult-us fueram,
We had been buried
{ Sepult-i eramus,
{ Sepult-i fueramus,*Thou hadst been buried*
{ Sepult-us eras,
{ Sepult-us fueras,
Ye had been buried
{ Sepult-i eratis,
{ Sepult-i fueratis,*- had been buried*
{ Sepult-us erat,
{ Sepult-us fuerat,
- had been buried
{ Sepult-i erant,
{ Sepult-i fuerant.

Future tense.

I shall be buried,
I will be buried
Sepel-iar,*Thou shalt or wilt be buried*
{ Sepel-iêris,
{ Sepel-iêre,*- shall or will be buried*
Sepel-ietur,*We shall or will be buried*
Sepel-iemur,*Ye shall or will be buried*
Sepel-iemini,*- shall or will be buried*
Sepel-ientur.

Imperative Mood, Present tense.

Be thou buried{ Sepel-ire,
{ Sepel-itor.
*Be ye buried**Be he buried, or*
Let him be buried{ Sepel-iatur,
{ Sepel-itor,*Be we buried, or*
Let us be buried
Sepel-iamur,{ Sepel-imini,
{ Sepel-iminor,*Be they buried, or*
Let them be buried{ Sepel-iantur,
{ Sepel-iuntor.

Potentia

Potential Mood, Present tense.

<i>I may be buried</i> Sepel-iar,	<i>Thou mayest be buried</i> { Sepel-iaris Sepel-iare,	- may be buried Sepel-iatur,
<i>We may be buried</i> Sepel-iamur,	<i>Ye may be buried</i> Sepel-iamini, Preterimperfect tense.	- may be buried Sepel-iantur.
<i>I might be buried</i> Sepel-irer,	<i>Thou mightest be buried</i> { Sepel-ireris Sepel-irere,	- might be buried Sepel-iretur,
<i>We might be buried</i> Sepel-iremur,	<i>Ye might be buried</i> Sepel-iremini, Preterperfect tense.	- might be buried Sepel-irentur.
<i>I might have been buried.</i> { Sepult-us sim Sepult-us fuerim, <i>We might have been buried</i> { Sepult-i simus Sepult-i fuerimus,	<i>Thou mightest have been buried</i> { Sepult-us sis Sepult-us fueris, <i>Ye might have been buried</i> { Sepult-i sis Sepult-i fueritis, Preterpluperfect tense.	- might have been buried { Sepult-us sit Sepult-us fuerit, - might have been buried { Sepult-i sint Sepult-i fuerint.
<i>I might have had been buried</i> { Sepult-us essem Sepult-us fuisset, <i>We might have had been buried</i> { Sepult-i essemus Sepult-i fuissetis,	<i>Thou mightest have had been buried</i> { Sepult-us esses Sepult-us fuissetes, <i>Ye might have had been buried</i> { Sepult-i essetis Sepult-i fuissetis Future tense.	- might have had been buried { Sepult-us esset Sepult-us fuisset, - might have had been buried { Sepult-i essent Sepult-i fuissent.!
<i>I may be buried hereafter.</i> { Sepult-us ero, Sepult-us fuero, <i>We may be buried hereafter</i> { Sepult-i erimus Sepult-i fuerimus,	<i>Thou mayest be buried hereafter</i> { Sepult-us eris Sepult-us fueris, <i>Ye may be buried hereafter</i> { Sepult-i eritis Sepult-i fueritis, Infinitive Mood.	- may be buried hereafter { Sepult-us erit Sepult-us fuerit, - may be buried hereafter { Sepult-i sint Sepult-i fuerint.
{ Pres. & Preterimp. <i>To be buried</i> Sepel-iri. { Partic. Pret. <i>Buried</i> Sepult-us,	{ Preterp. & Preterpl. <i>To have, or had been buried</i> Sepult-um esse } Sepult-um fuisse } { Partic. fut. in Dm. <i>To be buried</i> Sepel-iendus.	{ Future tense. <i>To be buried hereafter</i> Sepult-um iri } Sepel-iendus esse. }

The Compleat Analyser of the Parts.

BEing a sure and approved way, to try whether young Lads understand first their Rudiments or Grounds of Grammar, (in order to their *Translation*) and then the whole Grammar it self; it being requisite that they should give an account of what they have learned in one *Classis*, before they be removed into another. And let him, that upon trial is found most deficient herein, be put upon this exercise the oftner, that he may be able to keep pace with the rest of his Form; the way is as follows.

1. Let him take six, eight, ten, or more lines out of *Alops Fables*, or any other piece of *Familiar Latine*; and then let him construe them of himself, according to the *Antient*, and *Golden Rule* for Construing.

2. Let him write down the *English* alone, leaving a large space betwixt every line, wherein he should after wards write the *Latine* words answerable to the *English*, ex. gr.

Of the Husband-man and his Sons.

A Husband-man had a great many young men, and they were at discord among themselves; whom the Father striving to perswade to mutual love, &c.

De Agricola, & Filiis.

Of the Husband-man, and his Sons.

Agricola	habebat	comp'ures	adolescentulos, que
A Husband-man	had	a great many	young men, and
ji	fuere	discordes inter se;	quos pater elaborans
they	were	at discord among themselves;	whom the father striving
trahere	ad	mutuum amorem,	fasciculo apposito,
to perswade	to	mutual love,	a bundle of sticks being laid by,
jubet	singulos	effringere,	circundatum brevi
biddeth	every one	break it, (as it was)	tied together with a short
funiculo.	Imbecilla	et atula conatur nequicquam.	Pater solvit,
cord.	The weak youths	strive in vain.	The father looseth,
que reddit singulis	virgulam,	quam cum quisque pro	
and gives to everyone	a little wand,	which when every one according to	
suis viriculis	facile	frangeret, inquit, O filii	nemo
their little strength	easily	brake, he said, O little sons	no body
poterit	vincere	vos concordet	sic, &c.
will be able	to overcome	you holding together	thus, &c.

G

3. Let

3. Let him next tell you what part of Speech every word is, as well English as Latine, and write them down under so many figures, joining the English signs to the words to which they belong; beginning to reckon, and pick up first all the Nouns, viz. Substantive and Adjective, and then the rest orderly after this manner.

1.

Agricola a Husband-man.
Complures a great many.
Adolescentulos young men.
Discordes at discord, or disagreeing.
Pater the Father.
Mutuum mutual.
Amorem love.
Fasciculo a bundle of sticks.
Singulos every one.
Brevi with a short.
Funiculo cord.
Imbecilla the weak.
Etavula youths.
Singulis to every one.
Virgulam a little wand.
Viriculis little strength.
Filioli little sons.
Nemo no body.
Concordes holding together.

2.

Si they.
Se themselves.
Quos whom.
Quam which.
Quisque every one.
Suis their.
Vos you.

3.

Habebat had.
Fuere were.
Trahere to perswade.
Fuber biddeth.
Effringere break (it.)
Conatur strives.
Solvit looses, or unties.
Reddit gives.
Frangeret brake.
Inquit he said.
Poterit will be able.
Vincere to overcome.

4.

Elaborans striving.
Apposito being laid by.
Circundatum tied together.

5.

Nequicquam in vain.
Cum when.
Facile easily.
Sic thus.

6.

Que and.

7.

Inter among.
Ad to.
Pro according to.

8.

O, o.

4. Let him decline any one, or more Nouns, and conjugate any one, or all the Verbs throughout; and then write them down at large in English and Latine, as they are exemplified in this book.

5. Let him give the Analysis of any word, first at large by way of Question and Answer, and then sum it up in short; as to say, or write it down thus.

The Analysis of a Noun Substantive.

Quest. What part of speech is *Adolescentulos young men*?

Ans. *Adolescentulos young men* is a Noun.

Q. Why is *Adolescentulos young men* a Noun?

A. Because *Adolescentulus* a young man, is the name of a thing that may be seen.

Q. Is *Adolescentulos young men* a Noun Substantive, or a Noun Adjective?

A. *Adolescentulos young men* is a Noun Substantive.

Q. How do you know that *young men* is a Substantive in English?

A. I know that *young men* is a Substantive in English, because I can put *the* before it, and say with sense *the young men*; but cannot put *thing* after it, and say *the young man thing* without marring the sense.

Q. How do you know that *Adolescentulos* is a Noun Substantive in Latine?

A. By the declining of it, because it hath but one Article before it.

Q. Whether is *Adolescentulos* a Noun Substantive Proper, or a Noun Substantive Common?

A. *Adolescentulos* is a Noun Substantive Common, because it is common to more young men than one.

Q. How is *Adolescentulos* declined?

G 2

A. *Adols-*

Adolescentulus is declined like *Dominos* thus, Sing. Nom. *hic Adolescentulus*, Gen. *hujus Adolescentuli*, &c.

Q. Why Vocative ð Adolescentule ?

A. Here is to be noted, that when the Nom. endeth in *us*, &c.

Q. Of what case is Adolescentulus young men in English ?

A. It is of the Accusative case, known to be so in English, because it follows the Verb *bad*, (that being the place of an Accusative case,) and answereth to the question *whom* or *what* made by the Verb, as if it be asked *whom* or *what* *bad* be ? the answer will be *young men*.

Q. Of what Number is Adolescentulus young men in English ?

A. *Young men* is of the Plural Number, because it speaks of more than one, for *young men* is more than *one young man*.

Q. Of what Case and Number is Adolescentulus in Latine ?

A. *Adolescentulus* is of the Accusative Plural in Latine.

Q. How do you know that Adolescentulus is of the Accusative case Plural in Latine ?

A. By its Termination (or ending) in *us*, because there is no case else in the second Declension (*viz.* of Latine Nouns) that ends in *us*.

Q. Of what Gender is Adolescentulus ?

A. *Adolescentulus* is of the Masculine Gender, because it is declined with *hic*.

Q. Why is Adolescentulus declined with this Article hic, or why is it of the Masculine Gender ?

A. Because Nouns that end in *us*, and have no more syllables in the Genit. then they have in the Nom. are of the Masculine Gender; according to that Rule in *Propria quæ maribus*, *viz.* *Mascula in er, cen ven-ter*, &c.

Q. Of what Declension is Adolescentulus ?

A. Of Nouns or Pronouns ?

Q. Of Nouns.

A. *Adolescentulus* is of the second Declension of Nouns, because its Genitive singular endeth in *i*.

Q. Of what special Rule is Adolescentulus ?

A. *Adolescentulus* is of the first special Rule, because it hath no more syllables in the Gen. Sing. then it hath in the Nom. Sing. that is, fix in the Nominative and fix in the Genitive.

Q. But if Adolescentulus be of the first special Rule, it should be of the Feminine Gender, how comes it then to be of the Masculine Gender ?

A. It is of the Masculine Gender and not of the Feminine, because it is excepted from the first special Rule, by *Mascula in er, cen ven-ter*, &c.

Adolescentulus young men is a Noun Substantive, because I cannot put *thing* to it in English; and because it is declined with one Article in Latine; Common, because it is common to more; it is declined like *Dominos*, Sing. Nom. *hic Adolescentulus*, Gen. *hujus Adolescentuli*, &c. Voc. ð *Adolescentule*, by Here is to be noted, that when the Nom. endeth in *us*, &c. it is of the Accusative case, because it follows the Verb; plural, because

because it speaks of more then one in English, and ends in *er* in Latin of the *Masculine Gender*, because it is declined with *hic*, by *Masculine* *er*, *cen venter*. Of the *second Declension*, because the Genitive Singular ends in *i*; contained under the exceptions from the first Special Rule, because it hath no more syllables in the Gen. then it hath in the Nominative singular, that is, six in both cases.

* Q. Of what degree of Comparison is *Adolescens*?

A. It is of no degree of Comparison.

* Q. Why is *Adolescens* of no degree of Comparison?

A. Because it is not a Noun Adjective, nor an Adverb, for the degrees of Comparison usually belong to Nouns Adjectives, and Adverbs derived of Adjectives.

* Q. Of what Mood, Tense, or Conjugation is *Adolescens*?

A. *Adolescens* is of no Mood, Tense, nor Conjugation.

* Q. Why is *Adolescens* of no Mood, Tense, nor Conjugation?

A. Because it is not a Verb, for these things belong to a Verb, and not to a Noun.

The Analysis of a Noun Adjective.

Q. What part of speech is *Brevi* short?

A. *Brevi* short is a Noun.

Q. Why is *Brevi* short a Noun?

A. Because it is the name of a thing that may be understood.

Q. Whether is *Brevi* short a Noun Substantive or a Noun Adjective?

A. *Brevi* short is a Noun Adjective.

Q. How may short be known to be a Noun Adjective in English?

A. Because I can put *thing* to it in English, for no man can tell what is meant by *short*, unless another word be joyned with it, to limit its meaning to something, as *brevi funiculo* with a short cord.

Q. How know you that *Brevi* in Latin is a Noun Adjective?

A. By the declining of it, because it is declined with three Articles.

Q. How is *Brevi* declined?

A. *Brevi* is declined like *tristi*. Sin. Nom. *hic & hæc brevis*, & *loc breve*. Gen. *kujus brevis*, &c.

Q. Why *hic & hæc brevis*. & *hoc breve*?

A. By *Subgeminâ si voce cadant*; *velut omnis & omne*, &c.

Q. Of what case is *Brevi*?

A. *Brevi* is of the Ablative case, and it is known in English to be so only because its Substantive *cord* is of the Ablative case.

Q. Of what Number is *Brevi*?

A. *Brevi* is of the Singular Number.

Q. How do you know that *Brevi* is of the Ablative case singular?

A. By its termination in *i*.

Q. You may know that it is not of the plural number, because there is no case in the plural of Adjectives of three Articles that ends in *i*, but how do you know that *Brevi* is of the Ablative case, and not of the Dative singular, seeing they both end in *i*?

A. It must be of the Ablative case, because its Substantive *Funiculo* is of the Ablative case, and not of the Dative.

Q. Of what Gender is *Brevi*?

A. *Brevi* is of the Masculine Gender, because its Substantive *Funiculo* is of the Masculine Gender.

Q. But *Brevi* is of the Feminine and Neuter, as well as of the Masculine, (for if an Adjective hath but one Termination in a case, that Termination is of all three Genders) why do you not say then, that it is of the Masculine, Fem. and Neuter, or of any of them?

A. I do not say it is of the Masc. Fem. and Neuter, because an Adjective, as it agrees with one Subst. or more, can be but of one Gender, that is, it must be of the Masculine, when its Substantive is of the Masculine, as here it is : and of the Feminine, when its Substantive is Feminine, &c.

Q. Of what Declension of Nouns is *Brevi*?

A. *Brevi* is of the third Declension of Nouns, because its Gen. Sing. ends in *is*.

Q. Seeing all Adjectives that will admit of an alteration by more or less, (that is, that may be compared, as *Brevis* short may, viz. short, shorter, shortest) must either be of the Positive, Comparative, or Superlative degree; of what degree is *Brevis* short, the Nom. of *Brevi*?

A. *Brevi* is of the Positive degree of Comparison.

Q. How do you know that it is of the Positive degree of Comparison?

A. Because it hath neither the signs in English, nor the Terminations in Latine, of either the Comparative or Superlative degree.

Brevi is a Noun Adjective because it can put thing to it in English, and because it is declined with three Articles in Latine, like *Tristi* Sing. Nom. *Hic & hec Brevis*, & *hoc Breve*, &c. by *Sub geminâ si voce*, &c. of the Ablative case singular, because its Substantive *Funiculo* is so; (known partly by its ending in *i*;) of the Masculine Gender, because its Substantive *Funiculo* is so; of the third Declension, because its Genitive singular ends in *is*; of the Positive degree of Comparison, because it may be compared, and yet hath neither the signs in English, nor the Termination in Latine, of either the Comparative, or the Superlative degree.

* *Q.* Of what special Rule is *Brevi*?

A. *Brevi* is of no special Rule, because it is not a Noun Substantive.

* *Q.* Of what Mood, Tense, or Conjugation is *Brevi*?

A. *Brevi* is of no Mood, Tense, nor Conjugation.

* *Q.* Why is *Brevi* of no Mood, Tense, nor Conjugation?

A. Because it is not a Verb; for Mood, Tense, and Conjugation belong to Verbs.

The Analysis of a Pronoun.

Q. What part of Speech is *Quos* whom?

A. *Quos* is a Pronoun, because it is put instead of the Noun *Filios*.

Q. What

Q. What Pronoun is Quos? viz. Is it a Pronoun Substantive, a Pronoun Adjective, or a Pronoun Relative?

A. Quos is a Pronoun Relative, because it hath relation to Filios a Substantive that goeth before it: (and as it hath three Terminations, so it is an Adjective too.)

Q. Of what case is Quos?

A. Quos is of the Accusative case.

Q. Why is Quos of the Accusative case?

A. (Not because its Antecedent Filios is of the Accusative case, but) by the Rule for the case of the Relative, viz. Tet here is to be understood, &c.

Q. Of what Number is Quos?

A. Quos is of the Plural Number.

Q. How do you know that Quos is of the Plural Number?

A. By its ending in os.

Q. Why ought Quos to be of the Plural Number?

A. Because its Antecedent Filios is of the Plural Number.

Q. Of what Gender is Quos?

A. Quos is of the Masculine Gender.

Q. How do you know that Quos is of the Masculine Gender?

A. Because it is the first word in the Accusative case; by At si tres, &c.

Q. Why must it be (Quos) of the Masculine Gender?

A. Because its Antecedent Filios is of the Masculine Gender.

Q. Of what Person is Quos?

A. Quos is of the third Person because its Antecedent Filios is so.

Q. Of what Declension of Pronouns is Quos?

A. Quos is of the second Declension of Pronouns, because its Genitive singular ends in jus.

Q. What is the Antecedent to Quos?

A. The Noun Substantive Filios.

Q. How do you know that Filios is the Antecedent to Quos?

A. Because it comes before it in English, and answers to the question, who or what.

Quos is a Pronoun Relative, because it hath relation to Filios that goeth before; of the Accusative case, because governed of the Infinitive Mood, (or because there comes a Nominative between the Relative and the Verb.) I know it is of the Plural Number, because it ends in os, and it ought to be so, because its Antecedent Filios is of the Plural Number: of the Masculine Gender, because its Antecedent Filios is of the Masculine Gender; of the second Declension of Pronouns, because its Genitive singular ends in jus; of the third Person, because its Antecedent Filios is of the third Person.

** Q. Of what special Rule is Quos?*

A. Quos is of no special Rule.

** Q. Why is Quos of no special Rule?*

A. Because it is not a Noun Substantive, for the Special Rules belong to Nouns Substantives, and not to any kinde of Pronouns.

* Q. Of what degree of Comparison is Quos ?

A. Quos is of no degree of Comparison.

* Q. Why is Quos of no degree of Comparison ?

A. Because it is not a Noun Adjective ; for the degrees of Comparison belong to Nouns Adjectives, and not to Pronouns.

* Q. Of what Mood &c. is Quos ?

A. Quos is of no Mood, &c. because it is not a Verb.

The Analysis of a Verb.

Q. What part of Speech is Juber he biddeth ?

A. Juber is a Verb.

Q. How do you know that Juber he biddeth, is a Verb ?

A. Because it signifieth to do in English, and is declined with Mood and Tense in Latine.

Q. What kinde of Verb is Juber ?

A. Juber is a Verb Personal.

Q. Why is Juber a Verb Personal ?

A. Because it hath three Persons.

Q. What kinde of Verb Personal is Juber ?

A. Juber is a Verb Personal Active.

Q. How do you know that Juber is a Verb Personal Active ?

A. Because it endeth in o in the first Person Singular of the Indicative Mood, hath do before it in English, will take r to it, and will have an Accusative case after it answering to the question *whom* or *what*.

Q. Is Juber a Verb Simple or Compound ?

A. Juber is a Verb Simple, because it is not compounded of any thing.

Q. Of what Mood is Juber he biddeth ?

A. Juber he biddeth is of the Indicative Mood.

Q. How do you know that Juber he biddeth is of the Indicative Mood ?

A. Because there is no sign of any other Mood, that is, there is neither *let*, *may*, *can*, nor any other sign of a Mood before it in English.

Q. Of what Tense is Juber he biddeth ?

A. Juber he biddeth is of the Present Tense

Q. How do you know that Juber he biddeth is of the Present Tense ?

A. In English, by its ending in *—eth*, and in Latine, by its ending in *et*, viz. in the second Conjugation.

Q. Of what Number is Juber ?

A. Juber is of the Singular Number.

Q. Why is Juber of the Singular Number ?

A. Because its Nominative case *Pater* is of the Singular Number.

Q. Of what Person is Juber ?

A. Juber is of the third Person Singular.

Q. How do you know that Juber is of the third Person Singular ?

A. Because it ends in *et*.

Q. Of what Conjugation is Juber ?

A. Juber is of the second Conjugation like *Dacet*.

Q. How

Q. How do you know that *Jubet* is of the second Conjugation?

A. Because it hath *e* long before *re* in the fourth word in declining, viz. in the Present Tense, of the Infinitive Mood Active.

Q. How do you decline *Jubet*?

A. *Jubeo, jubes, jui, iuber, jubendi, jubendo, jubendum, jussum, jussu, jubens, jussurus, to bid.*

Q. Why doth *Jubeo* make *jussi* in the Preterperfect Tense?

A. By *Jubeo excipe jussi, sorbeo, sorbui, &c.*

* Q. Verbs simple in *eo* of the second Conjugation make their Preterperfect Tense to end in *ui*, why then is it not *jubui*, like *Docui*?

A. Because it is excepted from *Es in Præsenti, &c.* by *Jubeo excipe, &c.*

Q. Why doth *jussi* make *jussum* in the Supine?

A. By *Sist sum, &c.*

* Q. Why not by *Compositum ut simplex*?

A. Because it is not a Compound Verb, but Simple.

Jubet is a Verb, because it is declined with Mood and Tense: Personal, because it hath three Persons; Active, because it endeth in *o* in Latine, and may have *do* before it in English, and an Accusative after it answering to the question *whom* or *what*, and can be made a Passive by putting *to*, as *jubeor*; of the Indicative Mood, because there is no sign of any other Mood before it: of the Present Tense, because it endeth in *et* in English; I know it to be of the Singular Number, and third Person of the Indicative Present Tense, because it ends in *et* in Latine; and it ought to be so, because its Nominative Case is of the Singular Number, and third Person; of the second Conjugation, because it hath *e* long before *re* in the fourth word in declining Actively; it is declined like *docet. Jubeo, jubes, jui, (jubeo excipe jussi) iuber, &c. jussum, (si. fit sum, &c.)*

* Q. Of what Case, Gender, Declension, Special Rule, or degree of Comparison is *Jubet*?

A. *Jubet* is of no Case, Gender, Declension, Special Rule, nor degree of Comparison.

* Q. Why is *Jubet* of no Case, Gender, nor Declension?

A. Because it is not a Noun; for all these things belong to a Noun.

The Analysis of a Participle.

Q. What part of Speech is Apposito being laid by?

A. Apposito is a Participle.

Q. How do you know that Apposito is a Participle?

A. Because it ends in *rus*, (in the Nom. Singular and Masculine Gender) and is derived of a Verb.

Q. Of what Verb is Apposito derived?

A. Apposito is derived of the Verb *Appono* to lay by.

Q. Of what Case is Apposito?

A. Apposito is of the Ablative Case.

Q. Why is Apposito of the Ablative Case?

A. Because

- * Q. Of what degree of Comparison is Quos ?
 A. Quos is of no degree of Comparison.
 * Q. Why is Quos of no degree of Comparison ?
 A. Because it is not a Noun Adjective ; for the degrees of Comparison belong to Nouns Adjectives, and not to Pronouns.
 * Q. Of what Mood &c. is Quos ?
 A. Quos is of no Mood, &c. because it is not a Verb.

The Analysis of a Verb.

- Q. What part of Speech is Juber he biddeth ?
 A. Juber is a Verb.
 Q. How do you know that Juber he biddeth, is a Verb ?
 A. Because it signifieth to do in English, and is declined with Mood and Tense in Latine.
 Q. What kind of Verb is Juber ?
 A. Juber is a Verb Personal.
 Q. Why is Juber a Verb Personal ?
 A. Because it hath three Persons.
 Q. What kind of Verb Personal is Juber ?
 A. Juber is a Verb Personal Active.
 Q. How do you know that Juber is a Verb Personal Active ?
 A. Because it endeth in o in the first Person Singular of the Indicative Mood, hath do before it in English, will take r to it, and will have an Accusative case after it answering to the question *whom* or *what*.
 Q. Is Juber a Verb Simple or Compound ?
 A. Juber is a Verb Simple, because it is not compounded of any thing.
 Q. Of what Mood is Juber he biddeth ?
 A. Juber he biddeth is of the Indicative Mood.
 Q. How do you know that Juber he biddeth is of the Indicative Mood ?
 A. Because there is no sign of any other Mood, that is, there is neither *let*, *may*, *can*, nor any other sign of a Mood before it in English.
 Q. Of what Tense is Juber he biddeth ?
 A. Juber he biddeth is of the Present Tense.
 Q. How do you know that Juber he biddeth is of the Present Tense ?
 A. In English, by its ending in *—eth*, and in Latine, by its ending in *et*, viz. in the second Conjugation.
 Q. Of what Number is Juber ?
 A. Juber is of the Singular Number.
 Q. Why is Juber of the Singular Number ?
 A. Because its Nominative case *Pater* is of the Singular Number.
 Q. Of what Person is Juber ?
 A. Juber is of the third Person Singular.
 Q. How do you know that Juber is of the third Person Singular ?
 A. Because it ends in *et*.
 Q. Of what Conjugation is Juber ?
 A. Juber is of the second Conjugation like *Dacet*.

Q. How

Q. How do you know that Jubeo is of the second Conjugation?

A. Because it hath e long before re in the fourth word in declining, viz. in the Present Tense, of the Infinitive Mood Active.

Q. How do you decline Jubeo?

A. Jubeo, jubes, jussi, jubere, jubendi, jubendo, jubendum, jussum, jussu, jubens, jussurus, to bid.

Q. Why doth Jubeo make jussi in the Preterperfect Tense?

A. By Jubeo excipe jussi, sorbeo, sorbui, &c.

** Q. Verbs simple in eo of the second Conjugation make their Preterperfect Tense to end in ui, why then is it not jubui, like Docui?*

A. Because it is excepted from Es in Præsenti, &c. by Jubeo excipe, &c.

Q. Why doth jussi make jussum in the Supine?

A. By Si fit sum, &c.

** Q. Why not by Compositum ut simplex?*

A. Because it is not a Compound Verb, but Simple.

Jubeo is a Verb, because it is declined with Mood and Tense: Personal, because it hath three Persons; Active, because it endeth in o in Latine, and may have do before it in English, and an Accusative after it answering to the question whom or what, and can be made a Passive by putting to r, as jubeor; of the Indicative Mood, because there is no sign of any other Mood before it: of the Present tense, because it endeth in —et in English; I know it to be of the Singular Number, and third Person of the Indicative Present tense, because it ends in —et in Latine; and it ought to be so, because its Nominative case is of the Singular Number, and third Person; of the second Conjugation, because it hath e long before re in the fourth word in declining Actively; it is declined like docet. Jubeo, jubes, jussi, (jubeo excipe jussi) jubere, &c. jussum, (si, fit sum,) &c.

** Q. Of what Case, Gender, Declension, Special Rule, or degree of Comparison is Jubeo?*

A. Jubeo is of no Case, Gender, Declension, Special Rule, nor degree of Comparison.

** Q. Why is Jubeo of no Case, Gender, nor Declension?*

A. Because it is not a Noun; for all these things belong to a Nuon.

The Analysis of a Participle.

Q. What part of Speech is Apposito being laid by?

A. Apposito is a Participle.

Q. How do you know that Apposito is a Participle?

A. Because it ends in tus, (in the Nom. Singular and Masculine Gender) and is derived of a Verb.

Q. Of what Verb is Apposito derived?

A. Apposito is derived of the Verb Appono to lay by.

Q. Of what case is Apposito?

A. Apposito is of the Ablative case.

Q. Why is Apposito of the Ablative case?

A. Because

A. Because its Substantive *Fasciculus* is of the Ablative case.

Q. Of what Number is *Apposito*?

A. *Apposito* is of the singular Number.

Q. Why is *Apposito* of the singular Number?

A. Because its Substantive *Fasciculus* is of the singular Number.

Q. How do you know that *Apposito* is of the Ablative case singular?

A. Because it ends in *o*.

Q. You may know it is not of the Plural Number, because there is no case in the Plural Number that ends in *o*; but how do you know that it is not of the Dative singular, seeing that ends in *o* too?

A. Because its Substantive is not of the Dative, but of the Ablative singular.

Q. Of what Gender is *Apposito*?

A. *Apposito* is of the Masculine Gender.

Q. Why is *Apposito* of the Masculine Gender?

A. Because its Substantive *Fasciculus* is of the Masculine Gender.

Q. How do you know that *Apposito* is of the Masculine Gender?

A. Because it is the first word of the three Terminations in the Ablative case.

* *Q.* But *Apposito* is the third word of three Terminations, and therefore it is of the Neuter Gender; why say you then it is of the Masculine?

A. It is true, *Apposito* is of the Neuter Gender, when it agrees with a Substantive of the Neuter Gender: but here it agrees with a Substantive of the Masculine Gender, and therefore I say it is of the Masculine.

Q. Of what Declension is *Apposito*?

A. As it is the first word of a Participle of three Terminations, it is of the second Declension of Nouns.

Q. How do you know (as it is the first word of three Terminations) that it is of the second Declension of Nouns?

A. Because its Genitive case singular endeth in *i*.

Q. How is *Apposito* declined?

A. Like *Bonus* an Adjective of three divers endings, Sing. Nom. *Appositus*, *Apposita*, *Appositum*.

Q. *Apposito* is a Participle, but of what Tense?

A. *Apposito* is a Participle of the Preter tense.

Q. How do you know that *Apposito* is a Participle of the Preter Tense?

A. Because it hath its English ending in *d*, viz. laid, and its Latine in *tus*.

* *Q.* Doth *Apposito* end in *tus*?

A. No, it was never meant that any Case, and Gender of a Participle of the Preter tense should end in *tus*; but that the Nominative singular in the Masculine Gender should end in *tus*; as *Appositus* the Nom. Sing. and Masculine Gender of *Apposito* ends in *tus*.

Q. Whence is *Appositus* the Nom. Sing. and Masc. Gender formed?

A. *Appositus* is formed of the latter Supine of *Appono*, viz. *Apposui*, by putting to *s*, as *Apposui*, *Apposui*-s.

Apposito is a Participle, because it ends in *tus*, and is derived of the Verb

Verb *Appono*; of the *Ablative Case*, *Singular Number*, and *Masculine Gender*, because it ends in *e*, and is the first word of three Terminations; and it ought to be of the *Ablative Case*, *Singular Number*, and *Masculine Gender*, because its Substantive *Fasciculus* is so; of the *second Declension of Nouns*, because as it is the first word of three Terminations, it is declined after the second Declension, making its Genitive Singular to end in *i*; it is declined like *Bonus*, Sing. Nom. *Appositus*, *Apposita*, *Appositum*; it is a Participle of the *Preter tense*, because its English ends in *d*, and its Latine (in the Nom. Sing. and Masc. Gender) in *us*; and it is formed of the latter Supine *Apposui* by putting to *s*.

* Q. Of what degree of Comparison is *Apposito*?

A. *Apposito* is of no degree of Comparison.

* Q. Why is *Apposito* of no degree of Comparison?

A. Because no Participles are compared, except some of the Present tense, when they are changed into Nouns Adjectives. Or it is not compared, because it is not a Noun Adjective.

* Q. Of what Special Rule is *Apposito*?

A. *Apposito* is of no Special Rule.

* Q. Why is *Apposito* of no Special Rule?

A. Because it is not a Noun Substantive.

* Q. Of what Mood and Conjugation is *Apposito*?

A. *Apposito* is of no Mood nor Conjugation.

* Q. Why is *Apposito* of no Mood nor Conjugation?

A. Because it is not a Verb.

The Analysis of an Adverb.

Q. What part of Speech is *Cum* when?

A. *Cum* is an Adverb.

Q. Why is *Cum* an Adverb?

A. Because it is joyned to the Verb *frangeret*, to declare its signification.

Q. What signification hath *Cum*?

A. *Cum* hath the signification of Time.

Q. What Adverb is *Cum* when?

A. According to its signification it is an Adverb of Time.

Q. But why is not *Cum* a Preposition in this place?

A. Because it hath no casual word to serve unto, or govern, or because it is not set with an Ablative case.

Q. By what Rule is *Cum* a Preposition turned into an Adverb?

A. By Note also that the voices of Prepositions being set alone without their casual words, &c. Or by Also the voices of Prepositions, &c.

Q. Of what degree of Comparison is *Cum*?

A. *Cum* is of no degree of Comparison, because it cannot be compared.

Cum is an Adverb, because joyned to the Verb *frangeret*, to declare its signification; it is an Adverb of Time, because its signification is about Time, (for *when* is as much as to say, *at what time*;) it is a Preposition turned into an Adverb, because it is not joyned to an Ablative case; and

and it is of *no degree of Comparison*, because it cannot be compared.

* Q. *Of what Case, or of what Mood and Tense is Cùm ?*

A. Cùm is of *no case*; and of *no Mood and Tense*.

* Q. *Why is Cùm of no Case, and of no Mood and Tense ?*

A. Because it is not declined; for all words that are declined, are declined either with *Case*; or with *Mood and Tense*.

* Q. *Of what Declension is Cùm ?*

A. Cùm is of *no Declension*, because it is not a *Noun*.

* Q. *Of what Conjugation is Cùm ?*

A. Cùm is of *no Conjugation*, because it is not a *Verb*.

* Q. *Of what special Rule is Cùm ?*

A. Cùm is of *no special Rule*, because it is not a *Noun Substantive*.

The Analysis of a Conjunction.

Q. *What part of Speech is Que and ?*

A. *Que* is a *Conjunction*.

Q. *Why is Que a Conjunction ?*

A. Because it joyneth words together.

Q. *What kind of Conjunction is Que ?*

A. *Que* is a *Conjunction Copulative*.

Q. *Why is Que a Conjunction Copulative ?*

A. Because it coupleth both the words and sense, according to its signification. *Que* is a *Conjunction Copulative*, because it couples both the words and sense.

Here ask such trapping questions as were asked about an Adverb, that is, *Of what Case, or of what Mood and Tense is Que, &c. to which add.*

* Q. *Of what degree of Comparison is Que and ?*

A. *Que* is of *no degree of Comparison*.

* Q. *Why is Que of no degree of Comparison ?*

A. Because no *Conjunctions* are compared.

The Analysis of a Preposition.

Q. *What part of Speech is Ad to ?*

A. *Ad* is a *Preposition*.

Q. *Why is Ad a Preposition ?*

A. Because it is set before another word in *Apposition* (that is, it is so set before another word, as that it is no part of the word before which it is set, but serves to some case,) as *Ad amorem* to love.

Q. *What case doth Ad serve to, or govern ?*

A. *Ad* serves to, (or governs) an *Accusative case*.

Ad is a *Preposition*, serving to the *Accusative case*, because it is set before it in *Apposition*.

Here also ask such trapping questions as were asked about an Adverb, to which add as of a *Conjunction*, viz.

Q. *Why is Ad of no degree of Comparison ?*

A. Because no *Prepositions*, (as they are *Prepositions*,) are compared, and but a few as they are changed into *Adverbs*.

The

The Analysis of an Interjection.

Q. What part of Speech is O?

A. O is an Interjection.

Q. Why is O an Interjection?

A. Because it betokeneth a suddain passion of the minde under an imperfect voice.

Q. What Interjection is O?

A. O according to its signification is an Interjection of Exclamation.

O is an Interjection of Exclamation.

Were likewise ask such trapping questions as were asked about an Adverb and a Conjunction, to which add,

Q. Why is O of no degree of Comparison?

A. Because no Interjections are compared.

O Observe that those Questions which are marked with an Asterisk, are to be omitted when any Youth writes down the Analysis of any part of Speech, they being added only to catch one another when they are Posing (or challenging) for Places.

6. Having thus tried any Youth how he understands the Introduction, or first part of his Accidents, (for to him if you finde him expert therein, one Example may serve; but if not, you may yet make use of more, until he can perfectly and readily give an account of any word) You may further make trial how he understands the Rules of Concordance and Construction in the second part of the Accidents, by causing him to apply the Rules to every word, as he meeteth with it in the Grammatical Order, (that is, as he is Parsing the words in the same order in which he Construed them) thus.

Agricola is of the Nominative case coming before the Verb *Habebat*, because the word that answereth to the question, who or what? shall be the Nominative case to the Verb, and shall be set before the Verb. *Habebat* is of the Singular Number and third Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Agricola*, by that Rule, *A Verb Personal agreeth with its Nominative case in Number and Person.*

Complures is of the Accusative case, Plural Number, and Masculine Gender, and agreeth with its Substantive *Adolescentulos*, because, *The Adjective whether it be a Noun, &c.*

Adolescentulos is of the Accusative case, and followeth the Verb *Habebat*, because Verbs transitives are all such, &c.

Que is a Conjunction Copulative.

Is is of the Nominative case, Plural Number, and third Person, coming before the Verb *fuere*, because, *The word that answereth to the question, who or what? &c.*

Fuere is of the Plural Number and third Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Is*, by *A Verb Personal agreeth, &c.*

Discordes is of the Nominative case, Plural Number, and Masculine Gender, following the Verb *fuere*, and agrees with the Nominative case

and it is of no degree of Comparison, because it cannot be compared.

* Q. Of what Case, or of what Mood and Tense is *Cum* ?

A. *Cum* is of no case ; and of no Mood and Tense.

* Q. Why is *Cum* of no Case, and of no Mood and Tense ?

A. Because it is not declined ; for all words that are declined, are declined either with Case ; or with Mood and Tense.

* Q. Of what Declension is *Cum* ?

A. *Cum* is of no Declension, because it is not a Noun.

* Q. Of what Conjugation is *Cum* ?

A. *Cum* is of no Conjugation, because it is not a Verb.

* Q. Of what special Rule is *Cum* ?

A. *Cum* is of no special Rule, because it is not a Noun Substantive.

The Analysis of a Conjunction.

Q. What part of Speech is *Que* and ?

A. *Que* is a Conjunction.

Q. Why is *Que* a Conjunction ?

A. Because it joyneth words together.

Q. What kind of Conjunction is *Que* ?

A. *Que* is a Conjunction Copulative.

Q. Why is *Que* a Conjunction Copulative ?

A. Because it coupleth both the words and sense, according to its signification.
Que is a Conjunction Copulative, because it couples both the words and sense.

Here ask such trapping questions as were asked about an Adverb, that is, Of what Case, or of what Mood and Tense is *Que*, &c. to which add.

* Q. Of what degree of Comparison is *Que* and ?

A. *Que* is of no degree of Comparison.

* Q. Why is *Que* of no degree of Comparison ?

A. Because no Conjunctions are compared.

The Analysis of a Preposition.

Q. What part of Speech is *Ad* to ?

A. *Ad* is a Preposition.

Q. Why is *Ad* a Preposition ?

A. Because it is set before another word in Apposition (that is, it is so set before another word, as that it is no part of the word before which it is set, but serves to some case,) as *Ad amorem* to love,

Q. What case doth *Ad* serve to, or govern ?

A. *Ad* serves to, (or governs) an Accusative case.

Ad is a Preposition, serving to the Accusative case, because it is set before it in Apposition.

Here also ask such trapping questions as were asked about an Adverb, to which add as of a Conjunction, viz.

Q. Why is *Ad* of no degree of Comparison ?

A. Because no Prepositions, (as they are Prepositions,) are compared, and but a few as they are changed into Adverbs.

The

The Analysis of an Interjection.

Q. What part of Speech is O?

A. O is an Interjection.

Q. Why is O an Interjection?

A. Because it betokeneth a suddain passion of the minde under an imperfect voice.

Q. What Interjection is O?

A. O according to its signification is an Interjection of Exclamation.

O is an Interjection of Exclamation.

Here likewise ask such trapping questions as were asked about an Adverb and a Conjunction, to which add,

Q. Why is O of no degree of Comparison?

A. Because no Interjections are compared.

Observe that those Questions which are marked with an Asterisk, are to be omitted when any Pouth writes down the Analysis of any part of Speech, they being added only to catch one another when they are Positing (or challenging) for Places.

6. Having thus tried any Pouth how he understands the Introduction, or first part of his Accidents, (for to whom if you finde him expert therein, one Example may serve; but if not, you may yet make use of more, until he can perfectly and readily give an account of any word) You may further make trial how he understands the Rules of Concordance and Construction in the second part of the Accidents, by causing him to apply the Rules to every word, as he meeteth with it in the Grammatical Order, (that is, as he is Parsing the words in the same order in which he Construed them) thus.

Agricola is of the Nominative case coming before the Verb *Habebat*, because the word that answereth to the question, who or what? shall be the Nominative case to the Verb, and shall be set before the Verb. *Habebat* is of the Singular Number and third Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Agricola*, by that Rule, *A Verb Personal agreeth with its Nominative case in Number and Person.*

Complures is of the Accusative case, Plural Number, and Masculine Gender, and agreeth with its Substantive *Adolescentulos*, because, *The Adjective whether it be a Noun, &c.*

Adolescentulos is of the Accusative case, and followeth the Verb *Habebat*, because Verbs transitives are all such, &c.

Que is a Conjunction Copulative.

It is of the Nominative case, Plural Number, and third Person, coming before the Verb *fuere*, because, *The word that answereth to the question, who or what? &c.*

Fuere is of the Plural Number and third Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *It*, by *A Verb Personal agreeth, &c.*

Discordes is of the Nominative case, Plural Number, and Masculine Gender, following the Verb *fuere*, and agrees with the Nominative case

to the Verb, viz. *It*, by, And generally when the word that goeth before the Verb, &c.

Inter is a Preposition serving to the Accusative case, by These Prepositions following serve to the Accusative case, &c.

Se is of the Accusative case governed of the Preposition *inter*.

Quos is of the Plural Number, Masculine Gender, and third Person, and agrees with its Antecedent *Filios*, by The Relative agrees with its Antecedent, &c. Of the Accusative case governed of the Infinitive Mood *Trabere*, by *Tet* here is to be understood and noted, that the Relative, &c. Or by *But* when there cometh a Nominative case between the Relative, &c.

Pater is of the Nominative case, coming before the Verb *Subet*, because The word that answereth to the question, who or what? shall be the Nominative case to the Verb.

Elaborans is of the Nominative Case, Singular Number, and Masculine Gender, and agreeth with its Substantive *Pater*, because The Adjective whether it be a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle, &c.

Trabere is of the Infinitive Mood governed of *elaborans*, by *Where* note, that dignus, indignus, and others may instead of the Ablative, &c. or else by that Rule, Verbs of the Infinitive Mood are set after Verbs, or Adjectives, &c.

Ad is a Preposition serving to the Accusative case, by These Prepositions following serve to the Accusative case, &c.

Munus is of the Accusative Case, Singular Number, and Masculine Gender, and agreeth with its Substantive *Amorem*; by The Adjective whether it be a Noun, &c.

Amorem is of the Accusative case governed of the Preposition *Ad*.

Fasciculo is of the Ablative case absolute, because, A Noun or a Pronoun Substantive joined with a Participle, &c.

Apposito is of the Ablative Case, Singular Number, and Masculine Gender, and agreeth with its Substantive *Fasciculo*, because, The Adjective whether it be a Noun, &c.

Subet is of the Singular Number and third Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Pater*, because, A Verb Personal agreeth, &c.

Singulos is of the Accusative Case, Plural Number, and Masculine Gender, and agrees with its Substantive *Adolescentulos* understood, by The Adjective whether it be a Noun, &c. and it followeth the Verb *Subet*, by Verbs Transitives are all such.

Effringere is of the Infinitive Mood; the latter of two Verbs, and *Subet* is the former, because, When two Verbs come together, &c.

Circumdatus is of the Accusative Case, Singular Number, and Masculine Gender, and agrees with its Substantive *Fasciculum* understood, by The Adjective whether it be a Noun, &c. And it follows the Verb *effringere*, by Verbs Transitives are all such, &c.

Brevi is of the Ablative Case, Singular Number, and Masculine Gender, and agrees with its Substantive *Funiculo*, by The Adjective whether it be a Noun, &c.

Funiculo is of the Ablative case governed of the Participle *Circumdatus*,
111m,

um, by Participles govern such cases as the Verbs *that*, &c.

Imbecilla is of the Nominative Case, Singular Number, and Feminine Gender, and agrees with its Substantive *Etatula*, by The Adjective whether it be a Noun, &c.

Etatula is of the Nominative case, coming before the Verb *Conatur*, because, The word that answereth to the question, who or what? &c.

Conatur is of the Singular Number and third Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Etatula*, because, A Verb Personal agreeth, &c.

Nequicquam is an Adverb of a thing not finished.

Pater is of the Nominative case coming before the Verb *Solvit*, because, The word that answereth to the question, who or what? &c.

Solvit is of the Singular Number and third Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Pater*, because, A Verb Personal agreeth, &c.

Que is a Conjunction Copulative.

Reddit is of the Indicative Mood and Present tense, *que* completh like Moods and Tenses between *Reddit* and *Solvit*, by Conjunctions Copulatives and Disjunctives most commonly, &c.

Singulis is of the Dative Case, Plural Number, and Masculine Gender, and agrees with its Substantive *Adolescentulis* understood, by, The Adjective whether it be a Noun, &c. And is governed of the Verb *Reddit*, by Verbs signifying to give or restore require a Dative, &c.

Virgulam is of the Accusative case, and followeth the Verb *Reddit*, by Verbs transitives are all such, &c.

Quam is of the Accusative case, governed of the Verb *Frangeret*, by But when there cometh a Nominative case between the Relative, &c. And it is of the Singular Number, Feminine Gender, and third Person, and agrees with its Antecedent *Virgulam*, by The Relative agrees with its Antecedent, &c.

Cum is a Preposition turned into an Adverb of Time, by Also the voices of Prepositions if they be set alone, not having, &c.

Quisque is of the Nominative Case, Singular Number, and Masculine Gender, and agrees with its Substantive *Adolescentulus* understood, by The Adjective whether it be a Noun, &c. And comes before the Verb *Frangeret*, because, The word that cometh before the Verb, &c.

Pro is a Preposition serving to the Ablative case, by, These Prepositions following serve to the Ablative case, &c.

Suis is of the Ablative Case, Plural Number, and Feminine Gender, and agrees with its Substantive *Viriculis*, by The Adjective whether it be, &c.

Viriculis is of the Ablative case governed of the Preposition *Pro*, by These Prepositions following serve to the Ablative case, &c.

Facile is an Adverb of Quality, compared thus, *Facile facilius, facillime*.

Frangeret is of the Singular Number and third Person, and agrees with its Nominative case *Quisque*, by A Verb Personal agreeth, &c.

Inquit is of the Singular Number and third Person, and agrees with its Nominative case *ille*, or *pater* understood, by A Verb Personal, &c.

O is an Interjection of Exclamation.

Filioli is of the Vocative case governed of the Interjection *O*, by Certain a Vocative, Nemo

Nemo is of the Nominative case coming before the Verb *Poteris*, because, *The word that cometh before the Verb and answereth, &c.*

Poteris is of the Singular Number and third Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Nemo*, by *A Verb Personal agreeth, &c.*

Vincere is of the Infinitive Mood, the latter of two Verbs, and *Poteris* is the former, by *Also when two Verbs come together, &c.*

Vos is of the Accusative case, and followeth the Verb *Vincere*, by *Verbs Transitives are all such, &c.*

Concordes is of the Accusative Case, Plural Number, and Masculine gender, and agrees with its Substantive *Vos*, by *The Adjective whether it, &c.*
Sic is an Adverb of Likeness.

7. After your Scholars have Construed their Lesson, (and if you will, when they have Parfed too) let them all lay aside their Books except one, and then let him whom you cause to retain his Book in his hand, look on the Latine, and read it into English, and let every one (in that order that you shall choose) tell the Latine for every English word, and do you your self (or let him that reads it into English, Question them concerning the Parts of Speech (as they occur) after this manner.

Of a Noun Substantive.

Q. An Husband man? or what is Latine for an Husband-man?

A. *Agricola*.

Q. Why *Agricola* and not *Agricolam*?

A. Because it must be of the Nominat. case, and not of the Accusative.

Q. Why not of the Accusative case?

A. Because it comes before the Verb, whereas if it were to be translated *Agricolam* of the Accusative, then it should follow the Verb.

Q. But why not *Agricolæ* seeing that is of the Nominative case?

A. Because that is not of the right Number, for *Agricolæ* is of the Plural Number, and an Husband-man is of the Singular, whereas it should be of the same Number in Latine, that it is in English.

* Q. When two Cases are alike in a Noun or Pronoun Substantive, how shall they be known asunder; suppose the Dative and Ablative Plural?

A. By the signes of the Cases in English, as *Dat. to, Ablat. from, &c.*

* Q. But if you be to Translate a Case out of Latine into English that hath another Case like it, how will you know then what sign to put to it, and of what Case it is?

A. I know then of what Case it is by observing what Case the word immediately Construed before it will govern, be it *Genitive, Dative, &c.* and accordingly I give it the sign of the *Genitive, Dative, &c.* or leave out the sign of the Case, as the sense will best bear it.

* Q. If it be a Noun or a Pronoun Adjective that hath two Cases or two Genders alike, how do you know which Case it is of the two?

A. Then I find out the Substantive to it, and what Case and Gender that is; and say that the Adjective is of the same.

Of

Of a Verb.

Q. What is Latine for Had ? *A. Habebat.*

Q. Why do you not say Habebant ?

A. Because that is a false Concord in Number.

Q. How is Habebant a false Concord in Number ?

A. Its Nominative case Agricola is of the singular Number, and Habebant is of the plural Number.

Q. Why not Habebamus ?

A. Because that is a false Concord in Number and Person.

Q. How is Habebamus a false Concord both in Number and Person ?

A. The Verb Habebamus is of the plural Number, and first Person, and its Nominative case here, viz. Agricola is of the singular Number, and third Person.

Q. Why not Habebit, that is of the singular Number and third Person ?

A. That is no false Concord, yet it is a false Translation, because Habebit is not of the same Tense in Latine that Had is of in English.

Q. Why is not Habebit and Had of the same tense ?

A. Because Had is of the Preterimperfect tense, and Habebit is of the Future tense.

Q. What matter is it, of what Tense the Verb is, so it agrees with the Nominative case in Number and Person ?

A. Yes it is a matter, because the Verb must be made in Latine, of the same Tense, answerable to the English.

Q. Why not Haberet, that is of the same Number and Person, and of the same Tense ?

A. Though it be rightly Translated as to the Number, Person, and Tense, yet it is not right as to the Mood.

Q. Why is it not right as to the Mood ?

A. Because Had in English is of the Indicative, and Haberet is of the Optative, Potential, or Subjunctive Mood.

Q. Why may it not be of the Optative, Potential, or Subjunctive Mood ?

A. Because the Verb must be of the same Mood in Latine that it is in English.

Q. How knew you that Had in English is of the Indicative Mood, and not of the Optative, Potential, or Subjunctive ?

A. Because there is no signe of any Mood before it, therefore it is of the Indicative Mood.

Q. Why not Habebat ?

A. Because it is not of the first Conjugation, but of the second ; therefore it must not have its termination abas, but ebat.

Of a Noun Adjective.

Q. What is Latine for a great many ? (viz. young men ?)

A. Complures, or rather in this place permultos.

Q. Why do you not say permultum ?

A. Because that is a false Concord in Number.

Q. How is it a false Concord in number ?

*A. The Substantive to it, viz. *Adolescentulos* is of the plural number, and *permultum* is of the singular number.*

Q. What fault is there in permultus ?

*A. There is a false Concord in Case and Number ; for *Adolescentulos* is of the Accusative case, and plural Number ; and *permultus* is of the Nominative case and singular Number.*

Q. Why do you not say permultum in the Nominative case singular ?

A. Because that is the greatest false Concord that can be between a Substantive and an Adjective, viz. in Number, Case and Gender.

Q. How is it a false Concord in Number, Case, and Gender to say permultum ?

*A. Thus, *Adolescentulos* its Substantive is of the plural Number, and *permultum* is of the singular ; *Adolescentulos* is of the Accusative case, and *permultum* is of the Nominative ; *Adolescentulos* is of the Masculine Gender, and *permultum* is of the Neuter.*

Q. Why may you not make it of any Case, Number or Gender ?

*A. Because if I make it of another Case, Number or Gender, then of what its Substantive is, I break *Priscian's* head, in making a false Concord. Note, that I use *permukos*, because *Complures* cannot be varied so much as *permukos* can.*

Of a Noun Substantive as it follows the Verb, or any other Part of Speech.

Q. What is Latine for young men ? (viz. had young men.)

*A. *Adolescentulos*.*

*And here Questions are to be asked as about *Agricola*, with respect had to the diversity of Cases, as*

*Q. Why *Adolescentulos*, and not *Adolescentuli*, seeing that is of the Plural Number ?*

*A. Though that be no fault as to the Number, yet it is a fault as to the Case, because *Adolescentuli* is of the Nom. when as it should be of the Accusative.*

Q. Why must it be of the Accusative, rather then of the Nominative ?

*A. Because it follows the Verb, and answereth to the question *whom* or *what* ?*

*Q. Why *Adolescentulos* and not *Adolescentulum* ?*

*A. Because it is in English *young men* in the plural, and not a *young man* in the singular Number.*

*Q. Why *Adolescentulos* and not *Adolescentilis* ?*

A. Because the Verb requires an Accusative, and not a Dat. after it.

*Q. Why *Adolescentulos* and not *Adolescentules* ?*

*A. Because there is no such word in the Accusative plural, had it been of the third, or fifth Declension, it would have ended in *es* ; but seeing it is of the second Declension, it must end in *os*, as *Adolescentulos* ?*

*Q. What false Concord is there to say *Adolescentulorum* ?*

A. There can be no false Concord in a Substantive, except an Adjective

Give be joyned with it; however a false Construction there may be, as *Adolescentulorum* is, in that it is a Genitive for a Dative; also there may be a false Translation in a Substantive, viz. when it is of the singular in English, and of the plural in Latine, & vice versa, of the plural in English, and of the singular in Latine, &c.

Of a Pronoun Adjective.

Q. What is Latine for They? (viz. they were.)

A. Il.

Q. Why do you not say Is?

A. Because that is a false Concord in Number.

Q. Why is it a false Concord in Number?

A. Because its Substantive Adolescentuli understood is of the plural Number, and Is is of the singular. And Is is Latine for he, not for they.

Q. Why not Eorum, that is of the Plural Number?

A. Because that is a false Concord in case, (though not in Number) for Adolescentuli understood is of the Nominative case, and eorum is of the Genitive; also it must be of the Nominative, because it supplies the place of a Noun of the Nominative case coming before the Verb fuere.

Q. Why not Ez seeing that is of the Nominative case plural?

A. Because that is a false Concord in Gender, for its Substantive Adolescentuli is of the Masculine Gender, and ez is of the Feminine.

The rest of the Questions Adjective may be asked as about a Noun Adjective, and many more as there is leisure and opportunity.

Q. How say you in Latine were? (viz. they were.)

A. Fuere.

About which ask as about Habebat.

Q. What is Latine for at Discord, or disagreeing.

A. Discordes.

About which enquire as about Complures.

Of a Pronoun Relative.

Q. What is Latine for Whom?

A. Quos.

Q. Why not Qui of the Nominative case, seeing its Antecedent Adolescentuli is of the Nominative case?

A. Because the Relative and the Antecedent do not agree in case.

Q. Why must it be the Accusative case then?

A. Because there comes a Nominative case between it and the Verb, therefore it must be such case as the Verb or Participle here will have after it.

Q. Why not Quas that is of the Accusative case?

A. That is right as to the Construction, but not as to the Concord, for it is a false Concord in Gender.

Q. Why is Quas a false Concord in Gender?

A. Because its Antecedent Adolescentuli is of the Masculine Gender, and Quas is of the Feminine.

Q. Why not Quem?

A. Because that is a false Concord in Number, for Quem is of the singular Number, and its Antecedent Adolescentuli is of the plural.

H 2

Q. Why

Q. Why not Quam ?

A. Because that is a false Concord in Number and Gender, for *Quam* is of the singular Number, and feminine Gender, and its Antecedent *Adolescentuli* is of the plural Number and masculine Gender.

Q. What if Quos be of the second Person ?

A. Then it is a false Concord in Person, for its Antecedent *Adolescentuli* is of the third Person, because *All Nouns, Pronouns, &c.*

When you meet with a Pronoun Substantive ask such Questions as were asked about a Noun Substantive, as to its case, &c.

Q. What is Latine for the Father ?

A. Pater.

Concerning Pater ask such Questions as were asked about Agricola, observing the same variety when ever you meet with a Substantive.

Of a Participle.

Q. What is Latine for striving ? (viz. the father striving.)

A. Elaborans.

Q. Why not Elaborantes ?

A. Because that is a false Concord in Number.

Q. How is Elaborantes a false Concord in Number ?

A. The Substantive to it Pater is of the singular Number, and Elaborantes is of the plural.

Q. Why not Elaborantis ?

A. Because that is a false Concord in case.

Q. How is Elaborantis a false Concord in case ?

A. Elaborantis is of the Gen. and its Substantive Pater is of the Nom.

Q. Is Elaborantis a false Concord in nothing else ?

A. No, for Elaborantis is of the same Number and Gender with its Substantive Pater.

Q. Why not Elaborantia ?

A. Because that is a false Concord in Number and Gender, and Case too, if you mean Elaborantia of the Accus. or Voc. case.

Q. How is Elaborantia of the Accus. a false Concord in Number, Case, and Gender ?

A. Elaborantia is of the plural Number, and its Substantive Pater is of the singular Number, Elaborantia is of the Accusative Case, and Pater is of the Nom. (but if you mean Elaborantia of the Nom. then it is no false Concord in case,) Elaborantia is of the Neuter Gender, and its Substantive Pater is of the Masculine.

Of the Infinitive Mood of a Verb.

Q. What is Latine to persuade ?

A. Trahere.

Q. Why not traho ?

A. Because that is not of the right Mood, for traho is of the Indicative Mood, and is Latine for *I do persuade*, when as it should be of the Infinitive Mood.

Q. Why should it be of the Infinitive, and not of the Indicative ?

A. Because there is *To* before it in English, the signe of the Infinitive Mood;

Mood; therefore it must be of the Infinitive in Latine.

Q. Why not Trahire?

A. Because it is not of the fourth Conjugation like *Audire*, but of the third like *Legere*; therefore it must end in *ere*, not in *ire*.

Q. Of what Number and Person is Trahere?

A. Trahere is of no Number nor Person.

Q. What is the Nominative case to Trahere?

A. Trahere hath no Nominative case to it.

Q. Why hath Trahere no Nominative case to it?

A. Because it is of the Infinitive Mood, by that Rule, *And it hath neither Number, nor Person, nor Nominative case, &c.*

About Adverbs, Prepositions and Interjections there cannot be many Questions asked, yet as to the Cases governed of them it may be queried, as in the second Question following.

Q. What is Latine for to mutual love.

A. Ad mutuum amorem.

(Concerning the Adjective Mutuum, ask as about Complures.)

Q. Why Amorem, and not Amore?

A. Because the Preposition *Ad* of which it is governed, serves to an Accusative case, and not to an Ablative.

The like may be asked concerning any Case that is governed of an Adverb or Interjection, viz. Why this Case and not that? &c.

Of a Conjunction between two Moods of a Verb, or two Cases of a Noun.

Q. Why is the latter Verb of this Mood, or the latter Noun of this Case?

A. Because the Conjunction couples like Moods and Tenses of a Verb, and like Cases of a Noun.

Also it may further be enquired if you please when you meet with an Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, or Interjection,

Q. Of what Number, Case, Gender, Declension, Special Rule, Degree of Comparison, Person, Conjugation, or the like, is an Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, or Interjection?

To try whether your Scholars are able to tell you what parts they severally belong to, for if they understand what they have learned, they will answer thus;

A. None of these things belong to an Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, or Interjection, because they are not declined: onely Degree of Comparison belongs to some Adverbs and to some Prepositions, when turned into Adverbs,

Q. What is Latine for a bundle of sticks? (viz. being laid by.)

A. Fasciculo.

Q. Why not Fasciculus?

A. Because *Fasciculus* is of the Nominative.

Q. Why may it not be of the Nominative, as well as of the Ablative?

H 3

A. Because

A. Because it is joyned to a Participle, (*viz.* *Apposito*) and hath no other word whereof it may be governed, therefore it must be put in the Ablative case absolute.

For other Questions, *vid.* *Agricola*.

Q. What is Latine for being laid by?

A. *Apposito*.

When ever you meet with a Participle, for questions, *vid.* *Elaborans*.

Q. What is Latine for biddeth?

A. *Jubet*.

Q. Why not *Jubebat*?

A. Because that is of the Preterimperfect tense.

Q. Why may it not be of the Preterimperfect tense?

A. Because it hath the signe of the Present before it in English, *viz.* *—eth* at the end of *bidd*, therefore it must be of the Present tense in Latine, and of no other tense.

As for the Questions about the Word, Number, Person and Conjugation, ask as about *Habebat*.

And the like Questions should be asked concerning any of the Parts of Speech, when they are to shew their Dictates, (or other Latines of their own making) every morning, or as many of them as your time will give leave, and I could assure you upon my own experience, (if that might be esteemed of any moment,) that things thus distastd will render the Children very dexterous and expert in their Rules of Concord and Construction; and indeed in most things necessary for our Young Students in Lilly to be conversant in.

Also you shall do well, after they have made or Translated Latine into English, or English into Latine a while, to let them change those Exercises one with another, of their own, or the contrary side, to see whether they can finde out one anothers faults, either in Spelling, Stops, or Translation, or otherwise; (writing down at the bottom the number of faults) which will exceedingly animate them to a prompt proceeding with understanding, if Lilly's Exercises have any thing of truth in them, *viz.* *Qui docet indoctos licet indoctissimus esset*, &c. not to speak of your ease thereby, which over a while will prove not a little. I would also intreat you, to let the Lads ask these Questions among themselves, to try if they can trap one another, for besides the Sport that it will make you, it will very much advantage them.

2. Try him yet further by causing him to turn an English into Latine, in imitation of a Fable in Aesop, or something of any other Book that he learns, and to observe the artificial order in placing all the words. *ex. gr.*

A Master had a great many Scholars, and they were idle among themselves; whom the Master striving to perswade to the love of Learning, when he had laid down a Bee, he said, o my Scholars, I crave but this one thing of you, to wit, that you would but imitate this Bee, in her diligence which you see; then without doubt yeu will soon tast the sweets

ness of Learning sweeter then the honey; and as soon as you have once got a smack of it, you will prefer it above much, yea above *Cresin's* wealth; so will you quickly become learned, and hereafter none but a Clown will disesteem you.

Complures habebat Præceptor Discipulos, iique inter se otiosi fuere; quos Magister elaborans trahere ad eruditionis amorem, apposita Apes, d. inquit, Discipuli, hoc unicum solummodò à vobis posco, scilicet, ut hanc, quam videtis, Apem sedulitate suâ imitavemini: tum proculdubio literarum juvenilitatem melle dulciorem gustabitis, & simulac illam vel primoribus attingistis labiis, multis, imò Cræli divitiis anteponeitis; eo modo confestim decti estis evasuri, & debing nullus nisi agrestis vos nibili æstimabis.

When you have gone thus far with your Scholar whom you put to his Probation, and by this means have made him expert in his Rudiments, proceed to try how far he understandeth the whole Art of Grammar, by this or the like *Oratio*.

1. Let him take a piece of *Cælio's* Dialogues, or some other easie Latine, and write it down according to his Book, but as he writeth it, let him divide every word of more Syllables then one, according to the Rules of right Spelling, and give you an account of every Letter, and Syllable, and note of Distinction, according to the Rules of Orthographie, and of every Accent that he meeteth withall, also of the *v* Consonant and *u* Vowel, *i* Consonant and *i* Vowel, long *i* and short *s*: and of the Spirits and Quantities of Syllables (if he hath learned *Prologia*) according to the Rules.
ex. gr.

Eva, Adamus, Jehovah.

E. Mi vir si sci-res quàm sa-pi-dus sit hic fru-Eus, jam-da-dum com-e-dis ses, Ac-ci-pe. A. Quan-do i-ra vis, fa-ci-am. A. Ah fla-gi-ti-um se-ci-mus. E. Quid est? A. Non-ne vi-des mi-se-ra! nos es-se nu-dos? E. Vi-de-o, & me pu-der; sed quid no-bis fa-ci-en-dum est? A. Te-xa-mus no-bis sub-li-ga ex-la ex fo-li-is, qui-bus pu-den-da re-ga-mus. E. Be-ne mo-nes; & est hic fi-cus so-li-is ma-gnis & ap-tis bu-ic-re-i. A. Sed ò nos in-se-li-ces! vi-de-or mi-bi an-di-re vo-cem. E. Fe-bo-rab est; mi-se-ram me! ve-re-or nè de-pre-hen-dat nos nu-dos: ab-da-mus nos in hoc den-sum ne-mus. J. Hem, hem, ò A-da-me u-bi es? A. Au-di-tà vo-ce tu-à in po-ma-ri-o, ter-ri-tus sum; & qui a nu-dus e-ram ab-scon-di-me.

Of Letters.

Q. Why do you write Mi, Quando, Ah, Quid, Nonne, (and other words that begin a sentence) with great Letters?

A. Because the first Letter of any word that begins a sentence must be written with a great Character.

Q. Why do you write Adame with a great A?

A. Because all Proper names, names of Arts, Offices and Dignities, and

A. Because it is joynd to a Participle, (*viz.* *Apposito*) and hath no other word whereof it may be Governed, therefore it must be put in the Ablative case absolute.

For other Questions, *vid.* *Agricola*.

Q. What is *Latine* for being laid by?

A. *Apposito*.

When ever you meet with a Participle, for questions, *vid.* *Elaborans*.

Q. What is *Latine* for biddeth?

A. *Jubet*.

Q. Why not *Jubebat*?

A. Because that is of the Preterimperfect tense.

Q. Why may it not be of the Preterimperfect tense?

A. Because it hath the signe of the Present before it in English, *viz.* *—eth* at the end of *bid*, therefore it must be of the Present tense in *Latine*, and of no other tense.

As for the Questions about the *Word*, *Number*, *Person* and *Conjugation*, ask as about *Habebat*.

And the like Questions should be asked concerning any of the *Parts of Speech*, when they are to shew their *Dictates*, (or other *Latines* of their own making) every morning, or as many of them as your time will give leave, and I could assure you upon my own experience, (if that might be esteemed of any moment,) that things thus distastd will render the Children very dexterous and expert in their Rules of Concord and Construction; and indeed in most things necessary for our Young Students in *Lilly* to be conversant in.

Also you shall do well, after they have made of Translated *Latine* into English, or English into *Latine* a while, to let them change those Exercises one with another, of their own, or the contrary side, to see whether they can finde out one anothers faults, either in Spelling, Stops, or Translation, or otherwise; (writing down at the bottom the number of faults) which will exceedingly animate them to a prompt proceeding with understanding, if *Lilly's* Exercises have any thing of truth in them, *viz.* *Qui docet indoctos licet indoctissimus esse*, &c. not to speak of your ease thereby, which over a while will prove not a little. I would also intreat you, to let the Lads ask these Questions among themselves, to try if they can trap one another, for besides the Sport that it will make you, it will very much advantage them.

2. Try him yet further by causing him to turn an English into *Latine*, in imitation of a Fable in *Aesop*, or something of any other Book that he learns, and to observe the artificial order in placing all the words. *ex. gr.*

A Master had a great many Scholars, and they were idle among themselves; whom the Master striving to perswade to the love of Learning, when he had laid down a Bee, he said, o my Scholars, I crave but this one thing of you, to wit, that you would but imitate this Bee, in her diligence which you see; then without doubt you will soon taste the sweetness

ness of Learning sweeter then the honey ; and as soon as you have once got a smack of it, you will prefer it above much, yea above *Craesus*'s wealth ; so will you quickly become learned, and hereafter none but a Clown will disesteem you.

Complures habebat *Præceptor* *Discipulos*, itque inter se otiosi fuere ; quos *Magister* elaborans trahere ad eruditionis amorem, apposita *Apes*, dicit, inquit, *Discipuli*, hoc unicum solummodo à vobis posco, scilicet, ut hanc, quam videtis, *Apem* sedulitate sua imitave mini : tum proculdubio literarum jucunditatem melle dulciorem gustabitis, & simulac illam vel primoribus attigistis labiis, multis, imò *Cæli* divitiis anteponeitis ; eo modo confissim dehi essis evasuri, & debinc nullus nisi agrestis vos nibili æstimabit.

When you have gone thus far with your Scholar u hom you put to his Probation, and by this means have made him expert in his Rudiments, proceed to try how far he understandeth the whole Art of Grammar, by this or the like *Praxis*.

1. Let him take a piece of *Catallio*'s Dialogues, or some other easie *Latine*, and write it down according to his Book, but as he writeth it, let him divide every word of more Syllables then one, according to the Rules of right Spelling, and give you an account of every Letter, and Syllable, and note of Distinction, according to the Rules of Orthographie, and of every Accent that he meeteth withall, also of the *v* Consonant and *u* Vowel, *j* Consonant and *i* Vowel, long *ˉ* and short *˘* : and of the Spirits and Quantities of Syllables (if he hath learned *Profodia*) according to the Rules. ex. gr.

Eva, Adamus, Jehovah.

E. Mi vir si sci-res quàm sa-pi-dus sit hic fru-ctus, jam-da-dum com-e-dis ses, Ac-ci-pe. A. Quam-do i-ra vis, fa-ci-am. A. Ah fla-gi-ri-um se-ci-mus. E. Quid est ? A. Non-ne vi-des mi-se-ra ! nos es-se nu-dos ? E. Vi-de-o, & me pu-der ; sed quid no-bis fa-ci-eu-dam est ? A. Te-xa-mus no-bis sub-li-ga ex-la ex-fo-li-is, qui-bus pu-den-da te-ga-mus. E. Be-ne mo-nes ; & est hic fi-cus fo-li-is ma-gnis & ap-tis bu-ic-re-i. A. Sed ð nos in-fe-li-ces ! vi-de-or mi-bi an-di-re vo-cem. E. Je-bo-vab est ; mi-se-ram me ! ve-re-or nè de-pre-hen-dat nos nu-dos : ab-da-mus nos in hoc den-sum ne-mus. J. Heu, heu, ð A-da-me u bi es ? A. Au-di-ta vo-ce tu-à in po-ma-ri-o, ter-ri-tus sum ; & qui a nu-dus e-ram abs-con-di-me.

Of Letters.

Q. Why do you write *Mi*, *Quando*, *Ah*, *Quid*, *Nonne*, (and other words that begin a sentence) with great Letters ?

A. Because the first Letter of any word that begins a sentence must be written with a great Character.

Q. Why do you write *Adame* with a great A ?

A. Because all Proper names, names of Arts, Offices and Dignities, and

and words more eminent then others, must be written with a great Letter at the beginning, and all other words with a small.

Q. Why do you not write sed, quid, and nobis, &c. with a great Letter in the beginning?

A. Because they are no Proper names of Arts, Offices nor Dignities, neither begin a sentence, therefore they must be written with small Letters in the beginning.

Q. Why do you not write faciendum thus facienDum?

A. Because great Letters are never to be used in the middle of words, but in the beginning.

Q. Why do you write Jehovah with an J consonant?

A. Because it comes before a vowel, viz. e, and hath the sound of g softly pronounced.

Q. Why do you write vides with a v consonant?

A. Because it comes before a vowel, viz. i, and cannot be pronounced without drawing in the under lip to the upper fore-teeth.

Q. Why do you write subligacula and densum with a long s, and not with a short s, thus subligacula, densum?

A. Because the short s is never to be written but at the end of a word; and the long s at the beginning and middle of words.

Of Spelling.

Q. Why do you spell fla-gi-ti-um, and not flag-it-i-um?

A. Because a consonant set betwixt two vowels in words of many syllables belongeth to the latter, as in *flagitium*, g between, a and i belongeth to i the latter vowel; and t between i and u belongeth to the latter i.

Q. Why do you spell de-pre-hen-dar, and not dep-re-hen-dar?

A. Because consonants which can be joynd at the beginning of a word, must not be parted in the middle of it.

Q. Why do you spell fa-ci-en-dum, and not fa-ci-e-ndum, or fa-ci-end-um?

A. Because consonants which cannot be joynd in the beginning of a word, must be parted in the middle of it; that is, the first consonant must be put to the first vowel, and the latter consonant to the latter vowel: as n belongs to e, and d to u.

Q. Why do you spell ef-f-e, and not eff-e, nor e-ff-e?

A. Because if a consonant be doubled in the middle of a word, the first belongeth to the foregoing vowel, and the latter to the following vowel or syllable: as the first f to the first e, and the latter f to the latter e, and not both to one vowel.

Q. Why do you spell sub-li-ga-cu-la, and not sub-li-ga-cu-la, seeing bl will stand at the beginning of a word, therefore should it not be parted in the middle of it, but be written sub-li-ga-cu-la?

A. Because in words compounded, every part must be separated from another. The same reason may be also given for de-pre-hen-dar.

Q. Why

Q. Why do you write *com* and not *con*; and *ap* and not *ad*, &c. in many words compounded with *con* and *ad*, as *comedo*, *appono*? &c.

A. In words compounded with a Preposition, we must respect the ear, and good sound.

* Q. Of how many Letters doth a Syllable consist at the most?

A. In Latine not above six, as *serobs*; in English not above eight, as *strengths*, &c.

Q. Why *excribo*, and not *exscribo*?

A. Because *s* must not be written after *x*, by *Post x non scribitur s*.

Of the Notes of Distinction that belong to Sentences.

Q. What stop or note of Distinction (do you call that which) is at *misera*?

A. A Comma marked thus (,)

Q. Why is there a Comma at *misera*?

A. Because that is the shorter part of the sentence, and the breath ought to be stayed at it, but a little while in reading.

Q. What stop is at *Nudos*, viz. *nudos: abdamus nos*? &c.

A. A Colon, marked thus (:)

Q. Why is there a Colon at *Nudos*?

A. Because a Colon divideth a Period or sentence in the middle, and holdeth the breath somewhat long; and *nudos* is about the middle.

Q. What stop is at *Pudet*?

A. A Semicolon marked thus (;) viz. a Comma with a tittle over it.

Q. Why is there a Semicolon at *Pudet*?

A. Because there the breath ought to be stayed longer then at a Comma, but not so long as at a Colon.

Q. What stop is at *Tegamus*?

A. A Period or full stop, marked thus (.)

Q. Why is there a Period or full stop at *Tegamus*?

A. Because there is the end of a perfect sentence, where one may give over reading if he will.

Q. What stop is at *Eft*?

A. A point of Interrogation, marked thus (?)

Q. Why is there a point of Interrogation at *Eft*?

A. Because there is a question asked.

Q. What stop is there at *infelices*, and at *misera*?

A. A Point of Exclamation, (or Admiration) marked thus (!)

Q. Why is there a Point of Exclamation at *infelices*?

A. Because there is some kinde of wondering at some thing: or because there is an Exclamation or crying out.

Q. What is a Parenthesis?

A. A Parenthesis is a clause or sentence included in two half-Moons, which added to, or taken from the middle of another sentence, doth not interrupt or spoil the sense, but both waies, viz. when put to, or taken away, the other sentence remains entire and good.

Q. How is a Parenthesis marked?

A. A

A. A Parenthesis is marked thus ()

Q. Where then are these Notes of Sentences to be used?

A. A Comma almost at the beginning, and towards the conclusion of a sentence, that is, at all the shortest parts of a sentence. *A Colon* just at the middle most usually. *A Semi-colon* near to the middle. *A Period* always at the end of a complete sentence, and never elsewhere. *A Point of Interrogation* where a question is (or ought to be) asked. *A Point of Exclamation* where there is any admiring, or exclaiming at any thing, and usually after a Vocative case. *A Parenthesis*, or two half Moons are made, when any thing is added to a sentence, that may be taken in or left out, and the sentence be good both ways.

Of the Notes that belong to words.

Q. What Accent is there over Quàm?

A. A Grave marked upon the end of a word toward the right hand, thus (`)

Q. Why hath Quàm a Grave Accent?

A. To make it being an Adverb to differ from Quam the Pronoun; and because of the texture of words the Acute is turned into a Grave.

Q. What Accent is there over Nōne?

A. An Acute, marked toward the left hand, thus (´)

Q. Why hath Nōne an Acute Accent?

A. Because Non hath changed its Grave Accent into an Acute.

** Q. Why hath Non changed its Grave into an Acute?*

A. Because the Particle ne being an Enclitic, hath inclined its own Accent upon Non.

Q. What Accent is there in Tuà?

A. A Circumflex, marked over a Letter, thus (^)

Q. Why is there a Circumflex Accent over a in Tuà?

A. Because that is to denote, that Tuà is of the Ablative case singular of the first Declension of Nouns; which hath a long, marked with a Circumflex to distinguish it from all other Cases that end in a.

Q. Where else is a Circumflex marked?

A. On the Genitive singular of the fourth Declension of Nouns; on the third Person plural of the Preterperfect tense Active; on the second Person singular of the Present tense Passive, in the first, second, and fourth Conjugations; and on all other Syllables that are long by nature, or that are made long by the loss of a Syllable by Syncope, and then a Circumflex denotes a lost Syllable.

** Q. Why are these notes used, viz. Acute, Grave and Circumflex?*

A. They are used to difference (or distinguish) one word from another.

** Q. Why are not Accipe, ita, ah, est uttered sharply?*

A. Because they do not begin with h, which is the only note in Latin of Aspiration.

Q. What is an Apostrophus?

A. A

A. A mark which sheweth a Vowel cast away : as *viv'. potin'*.

Q. What is an Hyphen ?

A. A Note which sheweth what Syllables are to be joyned, as *Qui cumque, se ci mus* ?

Q. When is an Hyphen to be used ?

A. When two words are to be joyned together, and made one word ; also if there be one Syllable, (two, or many) more then the line will hold, an Hyphen must be made, and the remainder written in the next line.

2. Let him cast the words of his Authour into a Grammatical order, and Analyze every one of them exactly, according to Etymology and Syntaxis, (being expert first at Orthography) which is the usual way of Parsing, after this manner.

Mi vir, si scires quàm sapidus hic fructus sit, jamdudum comedisses. Accipe. Quando ita vis, faciam. Ab fecimus fugitum. Quid est? Misera! nonne vides, nos esse nudos? Video, & pudet me, &c.

Mi is a Pronoun Adjective Possessive, of the third Declension. Sing. Nom. *Meus, mea, meum, &c.* It is of the Vocative Case, Singular Number, and Masculine Gender, and agreeth with its Substantive *Vir*, by *Ad eundem modum Participia & Pronomina, &c.*

Vir is a Noun Substantive common. Sing. Nom. *hic vir.* Gen. *hujus viri, &c.* It is of the Vocative Case, Singular Number, of the Masculine Gender, (by *Mascula dicuntur monosyllaba, &c.*) of the second Declension, of the second Special Rule, and governed of the Interjection *o* understood, by *O exclamantis, &c.*

Si is a Conjunction conditional.

Scires is a Verb Personal Active Simple, of the fourth Conjugation, declined like *Audio, viz. Scio, scis, scivi, (Quarta dat is, ivi, &c.) scire, sciendi, sciendo, sciendum, situm, scitu, (Vi sit tum) sciens, sciturus.* It is of the Subjunctive Mood, Preterimperfect tense, singular Number, and second Person, and agrees with its Nominative case *Tu* understood, by *Nominativus prima, &c.*

Quàm is an Adverb of Comparison.

Sapidus is a Noun Adjective of three Terminations, like *Bonus.* Sing. Nom. *Sapidus, sapida, sapidum, &c.* by *At si tres variant voces, &c.* Of the Nominative Case, Singular Number, Masculine Gender, and agreeth with its Substantive *Fructus*, by *Adjectivum cum Substantivo, &c.*

Hic is a Pronoun Adjective. Sing. Nom. *Hic, hæc, hoc, &c.* (it wants the Vocative case, by *Et Pronomina præter, &c.*) it is of the Nominative Case, Singular Number, Masculine Gender, second Declension, and agrees with its Substantive *Fructus*, by *Ad eundem modum Participia, &c.*

Fructus is a Noun Substantive Common, like *Manus.* Sing. Nom. *hic Fructus.* Gen. *hujus Fructus, &c.* by *Mascula in er, cen, venter, &c.* It is of the Nominative Case, Singular Number, Masculine Gender, fourth Declension, and cometh before the Verb *Sit*.

Sis is a Verb Personal Neuter, simple, irregular. *Sum, es, fai, (Sui, tui, & à fu, sum fui; or Quædam Præteritum verba, &c.)* It is of the Potential Mood, Present Tense, Singular Number, and third Person; because it agrees with its Nominative case *Fructus*, by *Verbum Personale coheret. &c.*

Famulandum is an Adverb of Time.

Comedisses is a Verb Personal Neuter Compound, compounded of *con* and *edo*, com Euphonia gratiâ, conjugated like *Legisses. Comedo, comedis, comedi, (Præteritum dat idem, &c.) comedere, comedendi, comedendo, comestum, comesu, & comestum, comestu (unum duntaxat Comedo: &c. excepted from Compositum ut simplex;)* it is of the Potential Mood, Preterpluperfect tense, singular Number, and second Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Tu* understood, by *Nominativus primæ vel, &c.*

Accipe is a Verb Personal Active Compound, compounded of *Ad* and *Capio*, and maketh ac for *ad*, Euphonia gratiâ, and *cipio* for *capio*, by *Hec si componas &c.* it is declined like *Lego, Accipio, accipis, accipi, (and not accipit) by Præteriti nunquam, &c. Sumus acceptum acceptu, (and not acceptum, acceptu,) by Hec captum, factum, &c.* It is of the Imperative Mood, Present tense, singular Number, and second Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Tu* understood, by *Nominativus primæ, &c.*

Quando is an Adverb of Time.

Ita is an Adverb of Likeness.

Vis is a Verb Personal, Neuter, irregular, *Volo, vis, volui, (Of certain Verbs going out of Rule, &c. or by Lo fit ui, &c.) Supinis caret, by Hec raro aut nunquam, &c.* it is of the Indicative Mood, Present tense, singular Number, and second Person, and agrees with its Nominative *Tu* Nom. primæ.

Faciam is a Verb Personal Active simple, declined like *Legam, facio, facis, feci, (by Fit cio, ci &c.) facere, factum, (by Cifit tum, &c.)* it is of the Indicative Mood, Future tense, singular Number, and first Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Ego* understood, by *Nominat vus primæ, &c.*

Ab is an Interjection of Grieving.

Fecimus is declined like *Faciam, ut suprà*: it is of the Indicative Mood, Preterperfect tense, Plural Number, and first Person, and agrees with its Nominative case *nos* understood by *Nominativus primæ, &c.*

Flagitium is a Noun Substantive Common like *Regnum. Sing. Nom. hoc Flagitium. Gen. hujus flagitii, &c. (by Omne quod exit in um, &c. or Et quos in en vel in um, &c.)* it is of the Accusative case, singular Number, Neuter Gender, second Declension, and followeth the Verb *fecimus*, by *Verba Transitiva casusæque, &c.*

Quid is a Pronoun Adjective. Sing. Nom. *Quis, que, quid, &c. (by At sitres variant, &c.)* it is of the Nominative case, singular Number, Neuter Gender, where note that *Quid* is always a Substantive, &c. of the second Declension, and third Person, and cometh before the Verb *est.*

Est

Esse ut supra in sit; It is of the Indicative Mood, Present tense, singular Number, and third Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Quid*, by *Verbum Personale coheret*, &c.

Misera is a Noun Adjective of three Terminations, declined like *Niger*. Sing. Nom. *Miser. misera, miserum*, &c. (by *At si tres variant*, &c.) it is of the Vocative case, singular Number, feminine Gender, and agrees with its Substantive *Mulier* understood, by *Adjectivum cum Substantivo*, &c. And it is governed of the Interjection *O*, by *O exclamantis*, &c.

Nonne is a Conjunction Interrogative.

Vides a Verb Personal Active simple, declined like *Doces. Video, vides, vidi*, (by *Luceo, vult, luxi sedeo, sedi, videoque*, &c.) *videre, visum, visu*, (by *Sis sum*, &c.) It is of the Indicative Mood, Present tense, singular Number, and second Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Tu* understood, by *Nominativus primæ*, &c.

Nos is a Pronoun Substantive Primitive. Sing. Nom. *Ego*. Gen. *mei*, &c. (and it wants the Vocative case, by *Et Pronomina præter*, &c.) it is of the Accusative Case, Plural Number, Masculine Gender, first Declension, and comes before the Infinitive Mood *Esse*, by *Verba Infiniti Modi*, &c.

Esse ut supra in sit; It is of the Infinitive Mood, Present tense, set after the Accusative case *nos*; by *Verba Infiniti Modi*, &c.

Nudos is a Noun Adjective of three Terminations, declined like *Bonus*. Sing. Nom. *Nudas, nuda, nudum*, &c. (by *At si tres variant*, &c.) it is of the Accusative Case, Plural Number, Masculine Gender, follows the Infinitive Mood *esse*, and agrees with its Substantive *nos* before the Infinitive, by *Infinitum quoque utrinque eodem*, &c. *Video ut supra in Vides*; It is of the Indicative Mood, Present tense, singular Number, and first Person, and agreeth with its Nominative case *Ego* understood, by *Nominativus primæ*, &c.

Et is a Conjunction Copulative.

Pudet is a Verb Impersonal, declined in the third Person singular only. *Pudet, pudebat, puduit & puduitum est vel fuit*, &c. by *Adde pudet, faciens puduit, puduitumque*, &c.

Me ut supra in Ego; it is of the Accusative case, singular Number, and is governed of the Verb Impersonal *Pudet*; by *Huius Impersonalibus subiicitur Accusativus*, &c.

3. And now if by this time your Scholar hath learned Prosodia, you may quickly see whether he understands the Rules for the quantities of Syllables (contained therein) or not; by setting him to write out a sentence or two, and marking the Syllables of every word, in this manner;

Cūr vētūt vōs Dēus vēscī ēx ōmnībūs ārbōrībūs pōmārīi? līcēt nōbīs vēscī frūctībūs ārbōrūm pōmārīi; āntūm Dēus vōbīs intērdīxīt ēā ārbōrē, quā ēst īn mēdiō pōmārīō, nē vēscērēmūr frūctū ējūs, qvē ētīām āttingērēmūs nīl vēllēmūs mōrī.

Also

Also let him part the several Feet of a Verse (in scanning it) with Marks, as Mr. Hoole hath done in his Latine Grammar, giving every Syllable its due mark for the quantity of it, as in Curvêrê vôs, &c. and add the reasons according to the Rules why every Syllable is long, or short.

Pârvê nec l invidê l ô sinê l mē libêr l ibis in l ūrbēm.
 Hēi mihi l quôd Dômi l nō l nōn l licêt l irê l tū l ô.
 Vîvêrê l mē dī l cēs, sāl l vūm tāmēn l ēssê nē l gābū.
 Id quôquē l quôd vī l vām, l munūs hā l bērê Dē l ī.

Par is long, by Position, ve is short, by *E finita brevia sunt*, &c. Nec is short, by *Sed tria in e semper contrahuntur*, &c. In is long, by Position; vi is short, by Authority; de is short, by *Vocalis ante alteram*, &c. O is long, by *O infinita communis*, &c. Si is short, by Authority. Ne is short, by *E finita*, &c. Me long, by *Producuntur etiam Monosyllaba in e*, &c. Li is short, by Authority; ber is short, by *R finita corripitur*, &c. I is long, by Authority; bis is short, by *Is finita brevia sunt*, &c. In is short, by *Corripitur & in*, &c. Ur is long, by Position; hem is long, by *Ultima cujusque versûs*, &c.

Thus let every particular Boy practise by himself a while, upon a several piece of Latine, and it will make him minde what he doth; who otherwise cannot be brought off from heedless slubbering over of Lessons and Exercises, and when he can perform these things readily in English as they are here; then let him keep the same method in Latine, viz. Examining, and asking all the Questions in Latine.

N. B. Note that those Sentences that are Printed in an old English Character, are Directions for the Teacher.

The manner of giving a brief Account of every word in a Lesson.

Væ tibi ridenti nam mox post gaudia flebis.

Væ	wo		Int.
Tu	Thou	tui	Pron.
Ridens	Laughing	tis	Part.
Nam	For		Conj.
Mox	Presently		Adv.
Post	After		Prep.
Gaudium	Foy	ii	Noun. N.
Fleo	I weep	flevi	Retum. V.

The

The Books Apology for it self.

I Accost my Reader with this request, that he dash not my modesty out of countenance with too stern a look, nor reject me with a non libet at the first blush, but that I finde the same entertainment with him, that my Predecessors have had formerly, who have had fair play; that is, that he would take the pains to try me before he condemn me; and if upon a fair trial he finds me not to answer to a title what I promise in my Front (or which is all one, I render not the method of Learning more acceptable and feasible to Children's slender and volatile apprehensions,) then let him put this Complement upon me, Ad scambros & thus abeas, or any other: in a word, then let him speak and do his pleasure with me, if upon frequent repetition, (by the by, or otherways,) I make not Lads perfect in their Nouns and Verbs with a great deal of pleasure; and if to this I superadd a most certain way to try whether they understand both parts of their Accidents, and all Parts of their Grammar, (viz. Orthography, Etymology, Syntaxis, Prosodia,) who say or pretend that they have learned them; which manner of Examination, is a way to make them (as well as to try whether they be) Compleat Grammarians: if all this I say be done by me, let not my Reader bite me in the teeth, with Fronti nulla fides, in that sense in which it is too truly objected unto many, viz. That I promise more by my looks, then I am able to perform; for è contrà, by so much as the improvement of my last two sheets will produce, I perform more then the best Physiognomer will be able to divine concerning me, from an exact survey of all the features in my Front; however I desire not to abridge any one the use of the Proverb in a good sense, neither shall I think it any affront, but rather an approbation, to bear it often so used.

But methinks I hear some object, that I am as gay as Æsops Crow, viz. with mutuations (not to say stoln) Embellishments, and that I should be as mean as he, if every one had their own; to which I reply, I hope Artificial Additaments may not be denied me for the supply of Natures defects, no more then to those of an higher Extraction; for who is there of ours or any other Lineage, that borrows not something from anothers Stock; and if all Pedegrees do so, then certainly I among so many others may have the same liberty to do the like, and yet not suffer under the ignominious name of A meer Rhapsody, or An Æsops Jay: a candid Interpreter will forbear such saunts, and will not say I am spurious, because I bear a similitude to those of another birth in some of my parts, overlooking my dissimilitude from them in the rest; but will rather say I am both genuine and ingenious; genuine, in that I am most like him to whom I owe my Original; and ingenious, in that I am ready to tender my service to any one that shall be pleased to accept of it, toward the promoting of ingenuous education; to whom, whosoever he be, I wish success & a happy return.